PE 1111 .R275 Copy 1



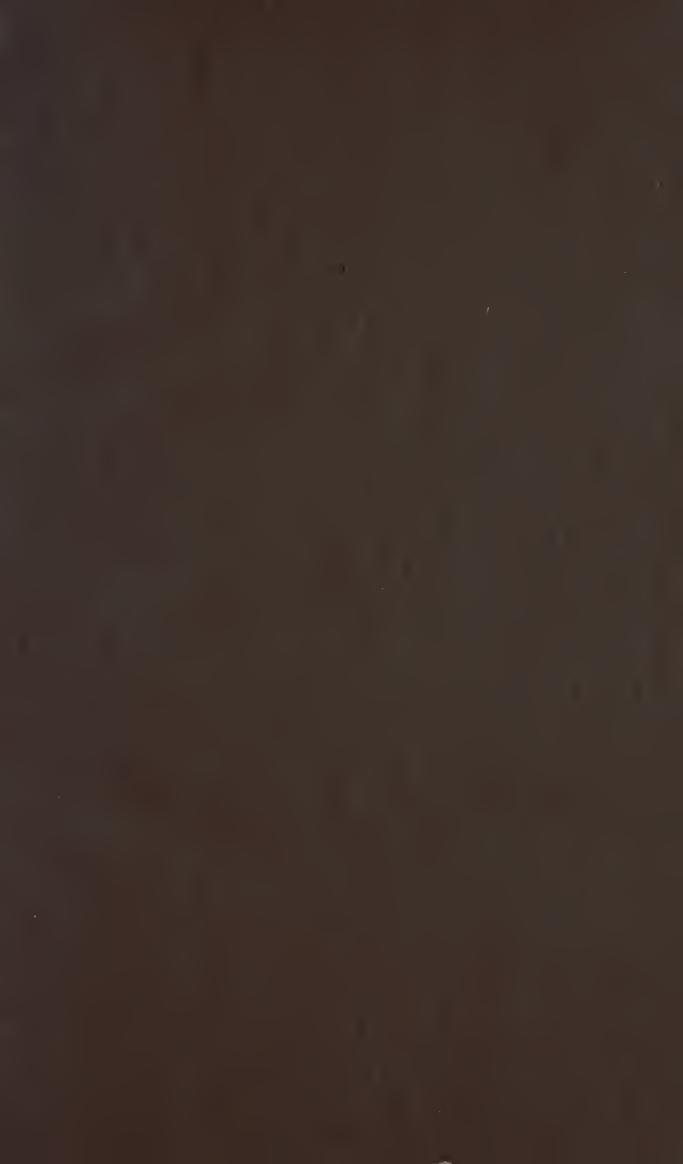


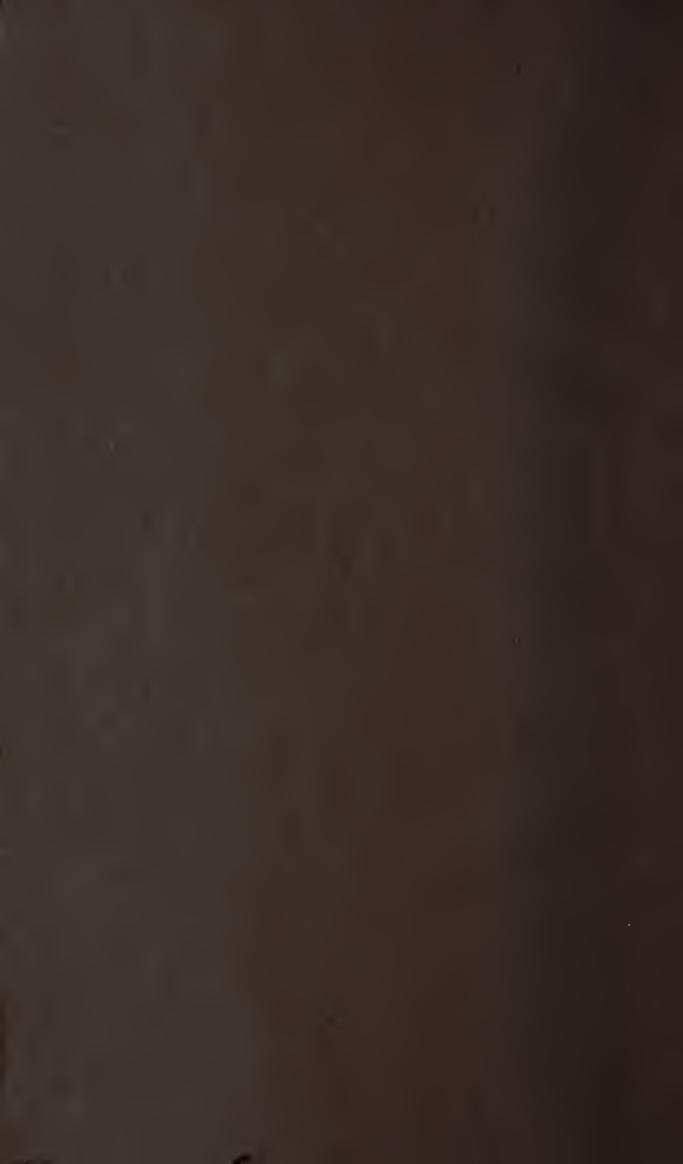
# LIBRARY OF CONGRESS.

Chuhran Cohnlight Lor

Shelf \_ \_ 5

UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.







PE WIS

### PREFACE.

THE object of this book is to give help to the private student of English Grammar, and to such teachers as have not always the time or the opportunity to examine authorities on grammatical construction.

The sentences here discussed are taken from the grammars of Raub, Harvey, Reed & Kellogg, and Swinton, in the order named; and in general the same technical terms are used as are given by the respective authors mentioned.

By permission of Dr. A. N. Raub, Grammatical Analysis by Diagrams is incorporated as a part of this book. It is introduced here (pages 3 to 41 inclusive) as being the simplest system of written analysis published, as well as the most teachable and most readily comprehended.

It is hoped that this little work may be of substantial aid to those who need help on this subject.

THE AUTHOR.

COPYRIGHT, RAUB & CO., 1889.

## GRAMMATICAL ANALYSIS.

The Elements of Sentences are the *Principal*, the *Modifying*, the *Connecting*, and the *Independent* parts.

The **Principal** elements are those which are necessary to the construction of a sentence. They are the *Subject* and the *Predicate*.

The Modifying elements are those used to limit or modify other elements. They are either Adjective, Adverbial, or Objective.

The Connectives are those which unite words, phrases, or clauses.

The Independent parts are those which have no grammatical relation to the rest of the sentence.

#### THE SUBJECT.

The Subject of a sentence may be either Simple, Complex, or Compound.

The Simple Subject is a noun or a pronoun, or some word, phrase, or clause used as a noun.

The Simple Subject is also called the Grammatical Subject.

#### THE PREDICATE.

The Predicate of a sentence may be either Simple, Complex, or Compound.

The Simple Predicate is always a finite verb.

The simple predicate may take the following forms:

- (a) A simple verb; as, He teaches.
- (b) A copula and its attribute; as, He is a teacher.
- (c) A complex verb; as, He laughed at them.
- (d) A factitive construction; as, He built the wall high.

The Attribute is an adjective, a noun, or some equivalent expression.

The Copula is either the verb to be or some other neuter verb, or a transitive verb in the passive voice.

The Simple Predicate is also called the Grammatical Predicate.

The Attribute may be any word, phrase, or clause.

#### WRITTEN ANALYSIS.

The following seems to be the simplest device for indicating subject and predicate, because most readily made. It consists simply of a perpendicular line crossed by a short horizontal line to separate subject from predicate. Thus,

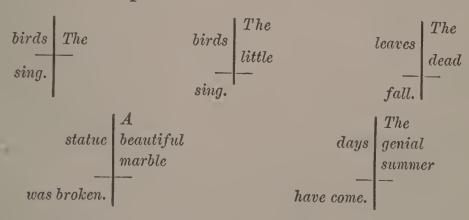
It will be seen that, whatever the simple subject, it stands to the left of the upper part of the perpendicular line, and, whatever the simple predicate, it stands to the left of the lower part of the perpendicular. By this arrangement we are enabled to place all modifiers to the right of the words which they modify, and also to write naturally from left to right and in horizontal lines.

### PRINCIPLES OF ANALYSIS.

In the Analysis of Sentences the following important principles should be kept in mind:

- 1. That Adjective elements are used to limit nouns and pronouns;
- 2. That Adverbial elements are used to limit adjectives, verbs, participles, and adverbs;
- 3. That Objective elements are used to limit transitive verbs in the active voice, when the limiting element represents the object upon which the action terminates;
- 4. That Articles, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections are not limited or modified.

Following the suggestion made heretofore, to place modifiers, whether words, phrases, or clauses, to the right of the words which they modify, the following examples of modified subjects will be readily understood without explanation:



The following examples of modified predicates will be equally clear:

Note.—A word omitted or understood may be indicated by

the following sign: x.

Should it be deemed necessary to distinguish the kind of modifiers, the simple figures 1, 2, 3 seem to answer every purpose. Thus, adjective modifiers may be indicated as below by (1), adverbial modifiers by (2), and objective modifiers by (3).

$$egin{array}{c|cccc} men & The^1 & pupils & His^1 \ \hline fought & bravely.^2 & learn & readily.^2 \ \hline \end{array}$$

When the modifying words are themselves modified, the simplest plan of diagramming is to place the modifier to the right of the modified word and draw a short perpendicular line between them. This diagram is both readily and rapidly made. See the application in the following sentences:

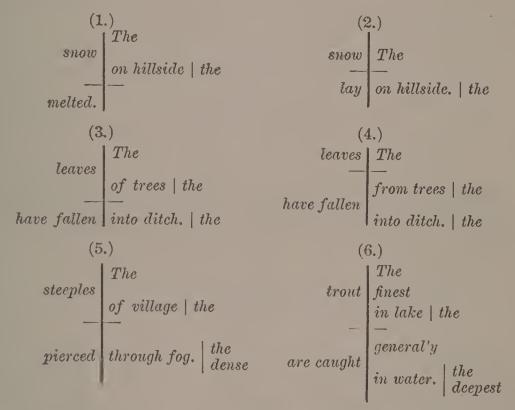
In the diagramming of phrases, whether infinitive, prepositional, or participial, the same principles should be followed as in the diagramming of single words.

See the following modified subjects:

Bushels were sold. 
$$\left| \begin{array}{c} of \ apples \\ \hline \\ & \\ \end{array} \right| = \left| \begin{array}{c} of \ apples \\ \hline \\ failed. \end{array} \right| \left| \begin{array}{c} His \\ to \ succeed \\ \hline \\ spread \end{array} \right| \left| \begin{array}{c} The \\ blowing \ | \ gale \ | \ a \\ \hline \\ fire. \ | \ the \end{array} \right|$$

The following modified subjects and predicates will be equally clear:

- 1. The snow on the hillside melted.
- 2. The snow lay on the hillside.
- 3. The leaves of the trees have fallen into the ditch.
- 4. The leaves have fallen from the trees into the ditch.
- 5. The steeples of the village pierced through the dense fog.
- 6. The finest trout in the lake are generally caught in the deepest water.

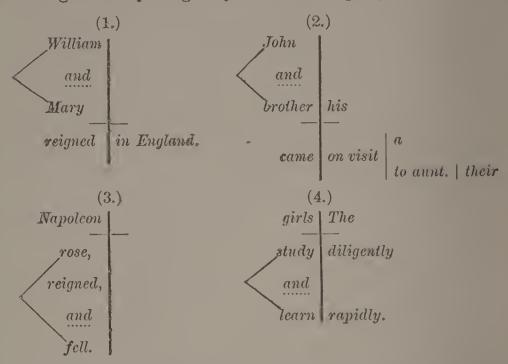


In sentences having compound subjects or compound predicates the words are usually connected by a conjunction. A simple plan of indicating the compound element is that of connecting them by oblique lines, as indicated on next page.

Conjunctions and other words used simply as connectives or independently may be indicated by placing a dotted line beneath, as in the following sentences:

- 1. William and Mary reigned in England.
- 2. John and his brother came on a visit to their aunt.

- 3. Napoleon rose, reigned, and fell.
- 4. The girls study diligently and learn rapidly.



Independent elements may be placed above and slightly to the left of the words they precede, as in the following sentences:

- 1. Oh horror! I tremble to think of the scene.
- 2. Hurrah! we have won the battle at last.

#### ATTRIBUTES.

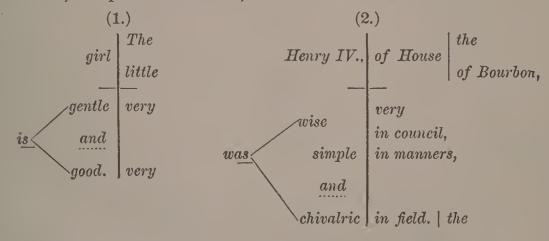
The predicate in some sentences consists of a copulative verb in connection with another word or a phrase, usually an adjective or a noun, which is known as the *attribute*, as in the sentences, "The trees are *tall*," "Silver is a *metal*," "John is not a good *boy*," "To love is *to obey*."

In diagramming a sentence containing an attribute the copula and the attribute may be written together as the

predicate. Either of the following two forms will be found convenient:

When there are several attributes, they may be written in the same manner as other connected elements. See the following:

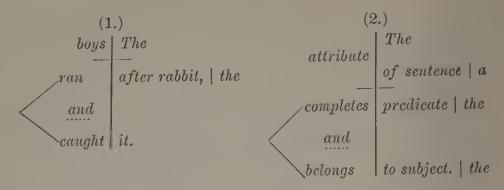
- 1. The little girl is very gentle and very good.
- 2. Henry IV., of the House of Bourbon, was very wise in council, simple in manners, and chivalric in the field.



When the predicate is compound, each verb may be modified singly, or both may be modified by the same word.

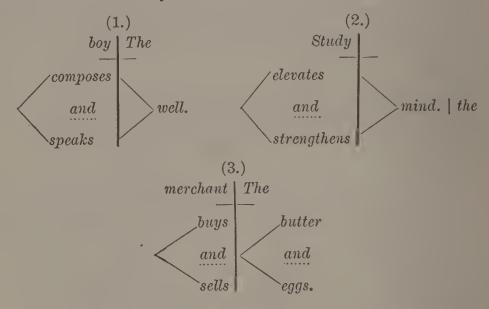
The following sentences illustrate the former case:

- 1. The boys ran after the rabbit, and caught it.
- 2. The attribute of a sentence completes the predicate and belongs to the subject.



The following are illustrations of sentences in which both predicate verbs are modified by the same word:

- 1. The boy composes and speaks well.
- 2. Study elevates and strengthens the mind.
- 3. The merchant buys and sells butter and eggs.



#### MODIFIERS OF NOUNS.

The modifiers of nouns or pronouns are always adjective elements.

As has been shown, nouns may be modified—

- 1. By adjectives.
- 2. By phrases, as in the following:
- 1. Men of wisdom were chosen.
- 2. Hinges of brass were broken.
- 3. Teachers of good judgment taught us.

$$\frac{Men}{were\ chosen.} \left| \begin{array}{c} (2.) \\ of\ wisdom\ Hinges \\ were\ broken. \end{array} \right| \begin{array}{c} (3.) \\ of\ brass \\ were\ broken. \end{array} \right| \begin{array}{c} (3.) \\ taught \\ us. \end{array}$$

#### 3. A noun may be modified by a participle.

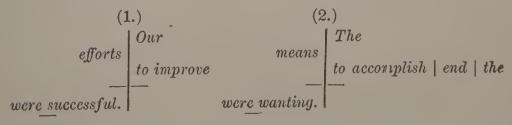
#### The diagram is as follows:

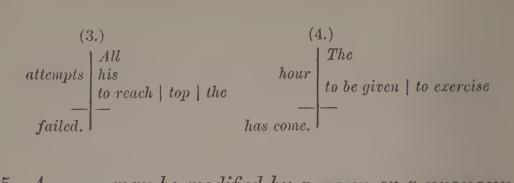
- 1. Truth crushed to earth will rise again.
- 2. The thief, having been detected, surrendered to the officer.
- 3. They boarded the vessel lying in the harbor.
- 4. A penny saved is a penny earned.

# 4. A noun may be modified by a verb in the infinitive mode.

#### The diagram is as follows:

- 1. Our efforts to improve were successful.
- 2. The means to accomplish the end were wanting.
- 3. All his attempts to reach the top failed.
- 4. The hour to be given to exercise has come.

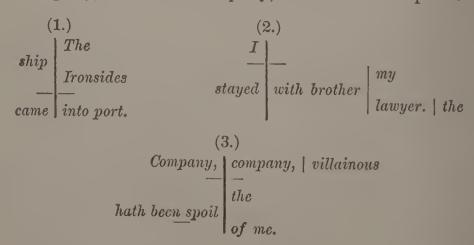




- 5. A noun may be modified by a noun or a pronoun in the possessive case. See the following:
  - 1. The farmer's crops were gathered.
  - 2. My brother's friend came to the city to-day.
  - 3. Our friend's house was burned yesterday.

$$\begin{array}{c|c} (1.) & (2.) \\ \hline crops \\ \hline \\ were \ gathered. \end{array} | \begin{array}{c|c} farmer's \mid The \\ \hline \\ \hline \\ \\ came \end{array} | \begin{array}{c|c} friend \\ \hline \\ to \ city \mid the \\ \hline \\ to-day. \end{array}$$

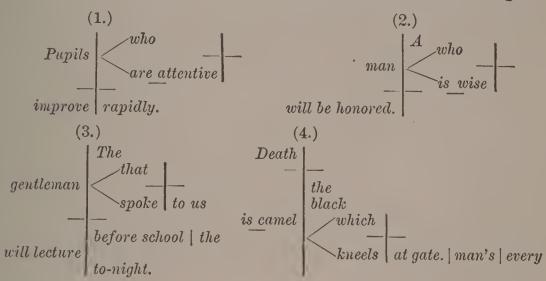
- 6. A noun may be modified by a noun in apposition. See the following:
  - 1. The ship Ironsides came into port.
  - 2. I stayed with my brother the lawyer.
  - 3. Company, villainous company, hath been the spoil of me.



7. A noun may be modified by a clause, thus forming a complex sentence.

The simplest form of diagramming is as follows:

- 1. Pupils who are attentive improve rapidly.
- 2. A man who is wise will be honored.
- 3. The gentleman that spoke to us will lecture before the school to-night.
  - 4. Death is the black camel which kneels at every man's gate.



A pronoun may be modified in all respects as a noun, except that it is not limited by a noun or a pronoun in the possessive case.

#### MODIFIERS OF ADJECTIVES.

The modifiers of adjectives are adverbial elements.

- 1. An adjective may be modified by an adverb. See the following:
- 1. The wall is very white.
- 2. The scenery is exceedingly grand.
- 3. The valley of the Mississippi is very fertile.
- 4. A very beautiful bird sat on the bough.



$$(3.) \\ valley \begin{vmatrix} The \\ of Mississippi \mid the \\ - \\ is fertile. \end{vmatrix} very \\ (4.) \\ bird \\ beautiful \mid very \\ sat \\ on bough. \\ | the$$

2. An adjective may be modified by a phrase.

#### See the following:

- 1. He was desirous of succeeding.
- 2. The soil is good for wheat.
- 3. He who is wise in his own opinion seldom pleases.

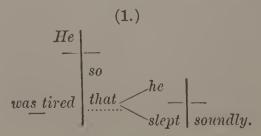
$$\begin{array}{c|c} (1.) & (2.) \\ \hline He & soil & The \\ \hline was \ desirous & of \ succeeding. & is \ good & for \ wheat. \\ \hline (3.) & \\ \hline He & is \ wise & in \ opinion & his \\ \hline pleases. & seldom & \\ \hline \end{array}$$

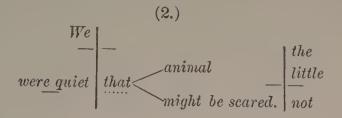
- 3. An adjective may be modified by an infinitive. See the following:
- 1. Diligent pupils are anxious to learn.
- 2. You are prompt to obey.

4. An adjective may be modified by a clause, thus forming a complex sentence.

See the following sentences:

- 1. He was so tired that he slept soundly.
- 2. We were quiet that the little animal might not be scared.





#### MODIFIERS OF VERBS.

The modifiers of verbs are either adverbial or objective elements.

Only a transitive verb in the active voice can have a direct object; this is called an Objective Element.

All other modifiers of verbs are adverbial elements.

1. A verb may be modified by an adverb.

See the following sentences:

- 1. The brook flows rapidly.
- 2. The timely suggestion was kindly received.
- 3. He spoke excitedly.

2. A verb may be modified by a phrase.

See the following:

- 1. We travel with ease:
- 2. A fertile valley lies between the two mountains.
- 3. England was conquered by the Normans in the eleventh century.

$$\begin{array}{c|c} (1.) & (2.) \\ \hline We \\ travel \\ \hline with ease. \\ \hline \\ lies \\ \hline \\ between mountains. \\ the \\ two \\ \hline \end{array}$$

$$was \ conquered \begin{vmatrix} (3.) \\ England \\ - \\ by \ Normans \ | \ the \\ in \ century. \ | \ the \\ eleventh \end{vmatrix}$$

#### 3. A verb may be modified by an infinitive.

#### See the following:

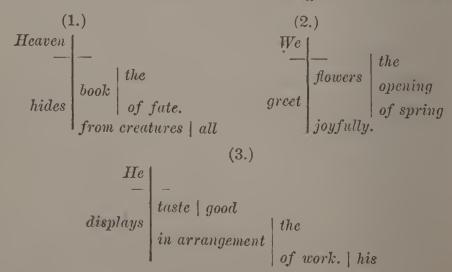
- 1. We came to recite.
- 2. We are commanded to love our enemies.
- 3. They will try to do their duty.
- 4. We will strive to honor you.

$$\begin{array}{c|c} (1.) & (2.) \\ \hline We & \\ \hline came & to \ recite. & arc \ commanded \ to \ love \ | \ enemies. \ | \ our \\ \hline (3.) & (4.) \\ \hline They & \\ \hline will \ try & to \ do \ | \ duty. \ | \ their & will \ strive \ | \ to \ honor \ | \ you. \\ \hline \end{array}$$

#### 4. A verb may be modified by an objective.

#### See the following:

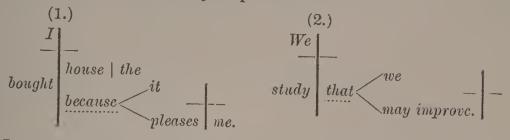
- 1. Heaven from all creatures hides the book of fate.
- 2. We greet the opening flowers of spring joyfully.
- 3. He displays good taste in the arrangement of his work.



### 5. A verb may be modified by a clause.

### See the following:

- 1. I bought the house because it pleases me.
- 2. We study that we may improve.



Note.—In both of the foregoing sentences the clause modifier is connected with the verb by a conjunction.

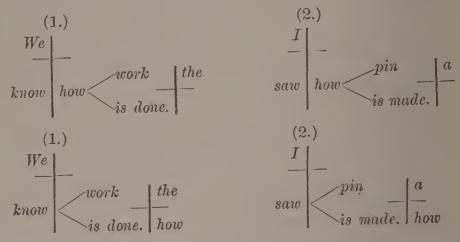
In the following sentences it is connected by a conjunctive adverb, which modifies the verb in each clause, and is placed in parenthesis to show that its office differs from that of the simple conjunction, as also from the simple connective adverb.

- 1. He studies while we play.
- 2. I will not study when vacation comes.
- 3. We can take a drive to the country when our friend arrives.
- 4. The children will come home when school is dismissed.

Note.—In some sentences the adverb introducing the subordinate clause is not a conjunctive adverb, limiting, as it does, only the verb in the modifying clause.

- 1. We know how the work is done.
- 2. I saw how a pin is made.

In the following diagrams the first set shows the use of the adverb as a connective. The omission of the dotted line shows that it is also a modifier. The second set of diagrams shows the adverb used as a modifier, and also that the whole clause which it introduces modifies the verb in the principal clause.



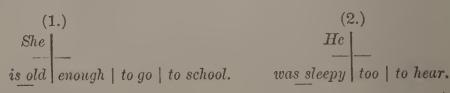
#### MODIFIERS OF ADVERBS.

All modifiers of adverbs are adverbial elements.

- 1. An adverb may be modified by an adverb. See the following:
- 1. We were welcomed very cordially.
- 2. A somewhat dangerous pass was reached quite unexpectedly.

$$\begin{array}{c|c} (1.) & (2.) \\ \hline We \\ \hline \\ were \ welcomed \end{array} | \begin{array}{c|c} very \\ \hline \\ cordially. \ | \ very \\ \hline \\ was \ reached \end{array} | \begin{array}{c|c} A \\ \hline \\ dangerous \ | \ somewhat \\ \hline \\ unexpectedly. \ | \ quite \\ \hline \end{array}$$

- 2. An adverb may be modified by a phrase. See the following:
- 1. She is old enough to go to school.
- 2. He was too sleepy to hear.

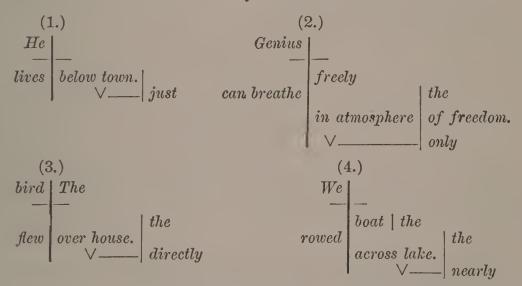


3. An adverbial phrase, or a group of words used as an adverb, may be modified in the same manner as a single word.

In sentence (1.) given below, just modifies the phrase "below town;" in sentence (2.), only modifies the phrase "in atmosphere;" in sentence (3.), directly modifies the phrase "over house;" in sentence (4.), nearly modifies the phrase "across lake."

It is held by some writers on grammar, but incorrectly, that in such cases the adverb modifies a preposition.

- 1. He lives just below town.
- 2. Genius can breathe freely only in the atmosphere of freedom.
  - 3. The bird flew directly over the house.
  - 4. We rowed the boat nearly across the lake.



Note.—The inverted caret shows that the phrase is modified as a whole; the line connects the caret with the modifying word.

#### FACTITIVES.

The predicate verb of a sentence, when having the signification of *make*, is sometimes followed by another word, usually a noun or an adjective, which completes the meaning of the verb, but refers to the object, as in

the sentence, Wash your hands clean; that is, cleanse your hands. Also in the sentence, His subjects elected him king; that is, kinged or crowned him. This word following the verb is called a factitive. In all such cases the verb and the factitive together form the simple predicate, and are together equivalent to a single word.

The word factitive is derived from facio, "I make." By some authors the factitive is called the objective complement.

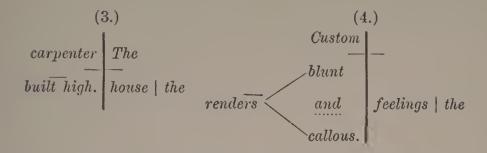
The manner of diagramming factitives is indicated below.

- 1. The following sentences contain factitive nouns:
- 1. The company chose him captain.
- 2. They called him names.
- 3. Her subjects made her queen.

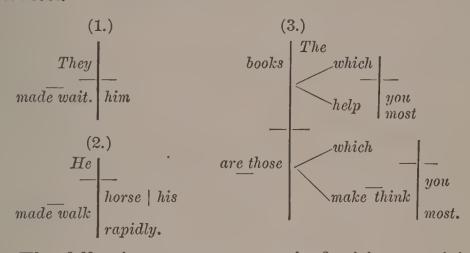
Note.—A short horizontal line is placed above the combined predicate to distinguish the factitive from the attribute, which has the line below.

- 2. The following sentences contain factitive adjectives:
- 1. The painter painted the wall white.
- 2. Open the door wide.
- 3. The carpenter built the house high.
- 4. Custom renders the feelings blunt and callous.

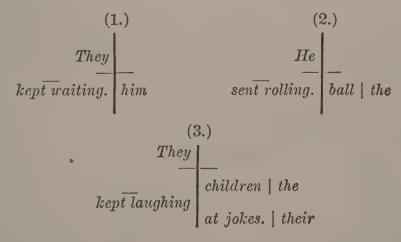




- 3. The following sentences contain factitive infinitives:
- 1. They made him wait.
- 2. He made his horse walk rapidly.
- 3. The books which help you most are those which make you think most.



- 4. The following sentences contain factitive participles:
- 1. They kept him waiting.
- 2. He sent the ball rolling.
- 3. They kept the children laughing at their jokes.



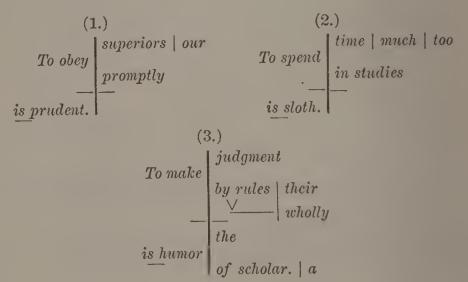
#### INFINITIVES.

A verb in the infinitive mode depends upon the word which it limits or completes in meaning.

1. A verb in the infinitive mode may be used as the subject of a sentence, but when so used it is modified in all respects as a verb.

See the following examples:

- 1. To obey our superiors promptly is prudent.
- 2. To spend too much time in studies is sloth.
- 3. To make judgment wholly by their rules is the humor of a scholar.



2. A verb in the infinitive mode may be used as the object.

See the following:

- 1. He refused to obey.
- 2. We should learn to govern ourselves.



3. A verb in the infinitive mode may be used as the attribute.

#### See the following:

- 1. The noblest vengeance is to forgive.
- 2. To bear our fate is to conquer it.
- 3. To be good is to be great.

Note.—The adjectives good and great in example (3) are used abstractly.

4. A verb in the infinitive mode may be used as an adjective modifier.

#### See the following:

- 1. Orders to vacate were given yesterday.
- 2. The hot-house is a trap to catch sunbeams.
- 3. Money to assist the poor was left with me.
- 4. All attempts to conquer him were fruitless.

5. A verb in the infinitive mode may be used as an adverbial modifier.

#### See the following:

- 1. We will sing to please you.
- 2. The child was afraid to go alone.

- 3. The boys stopped to play by the way.
- 4. We came to recite our lesson.

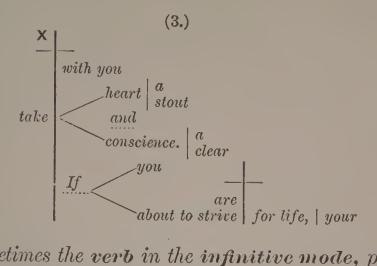
Note.—For the use of the infinitive as a factitive see page 21.

6. A verb in the infinitive mode is sometimes used independently, as in the sentence, To confess the truth, I am sorry for him.

In such cases the infinitive is diagrammed as an independent element, as follows:

- 7. The infinitive phrase is sometimes used after a preposition, the two forming an attribute, as in the sentences:
  - 1. Our friends are about to leave us.
  - 2. The pupils are now about to recite.
- 3. If you are about to strive for your life, take with you a stout heart and a clear conscience.

$$\begin{array}{c|c} & .(1.) & (2.) \\ \hline friends & Our & pupils & The \\ \hline are & & are & now \\ about to leave & us. & about to recite. \end{array}$$



- 8. Sometimes the verb in the infinitive mode, preceded by a prepositional phrase, is used as the subject of a sentence, as in the sentences:
  - 1. For us to do our duty is proper.
- 2. For a man to be proud of his learning is the greatest ignorance.

For 
$$us \mid to \ do$$
 duty  $\mid our$  For  $man \mid a$  to be proud of learning  $\mid his$  is ignorance.

$$\begin{array}{c|c}
\hline
 & is \ ignorance. \\
\hline
 & greatest
\end{array}$$

- 9. An infinitive phrase is sometimes used as explanatory of the subject, as in the sentences:
  - 1. It is wise to improve the time.
  - 2. It is easy to find fault.
  - 3. It is natural to man to indulge in the illusions of hope.

#### PARTICIPLES.

1. Participles, when used as nouns, may be modified either as nouns or as participles, or as both at the same time.

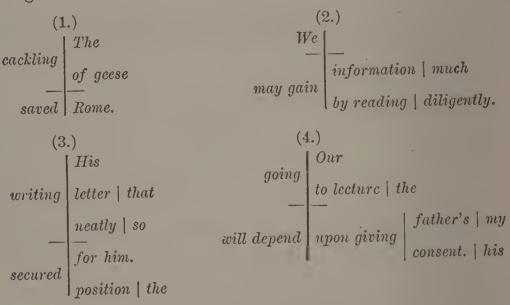
See the following sentences:

1. The cackling of geese saved Rome.

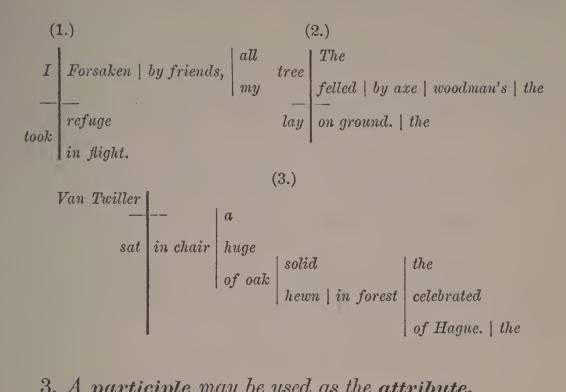
2. We may gain much information by reading diligently.

3. His writing that letter so neatly secured the position for him.

4. Our going to the lecture will depend upon my father's giving his consent.



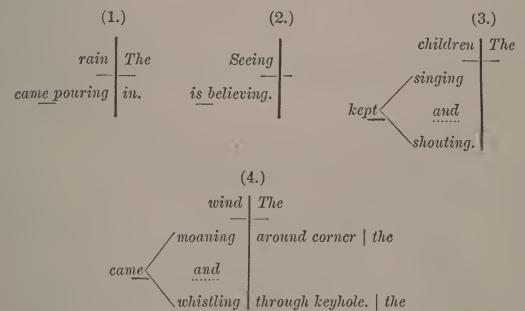
- 2. Participles, when not forming a part of the simple subject or predicate, are either objective or adjective elements. They are objective only when used as nouns. When used as pure participles, they are adjective elements, as in the following sentences:
  - 1. Forsaken by all my friends, I took refuge in flight.
  - 2. The tree felled by the woodman's axe lay on the ground.
- 3. Van Twiller sat in a huge chair of solid oak hewn in the celebrated forest of the Hague.



#### 3. A participle may be used as the attribute.

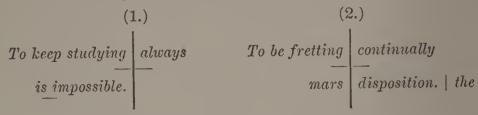
See the following sentences:

- 1. The rain came pouring in.
- 2. Seeing is believing.
- 3. The children kept singing and shouting.
- 4. The wind came moaning around the corner and whistling through the keyhole.



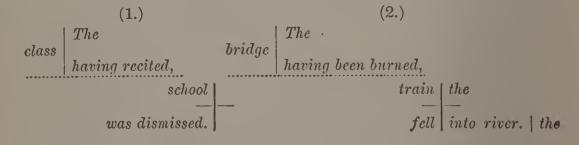
Note.—For the use of the participle as a factitive see page 21.

- 4. A participle may be used independently after a verb in the infinitive mode; as,
  - 1. To keep studying always is impossible.
  - 2. To be fretting continually mars the disposition.



- 5. A participle may be followed by a noun or a pronoun used independently, as in the sentences:
  - 1. His being an officer protected him.
  - 2. Our being Americans gave us an advantage.

- 6 A participle may be used in independent or absolute phrases, as in the sentences:
  - 1. The class having recited, school was dismissed.
- 2. The bridge having been burned, the train fell into the river.



#### THE COMPLEX SENTENCE.

A Complex Sentence is one which contains a principal proposition modified by one or more subordinate propositions. The following are examples:

The moon was still shining when we returned home.

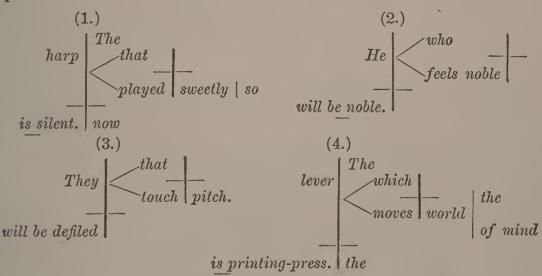
The hotel at which we stayed was overcrowded.

In the sentences given above, the italicized words constitute the principal proposition in each sentence.

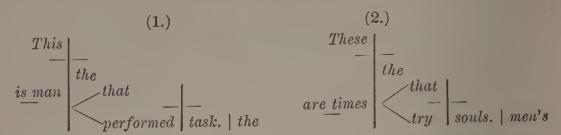
#### THE ADJECTIVE CLAUSE.

When a noun or a pronoun is modified by a clause, the modifier is known as an adjective element or clause.

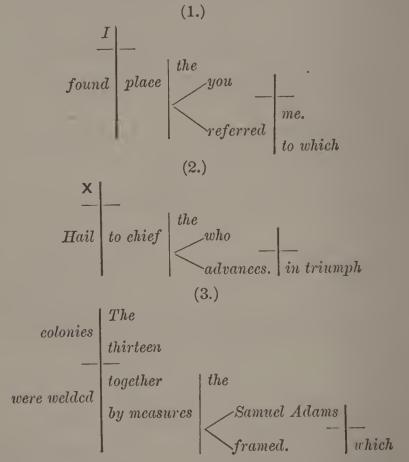
- 1. An adjective clause may modify a noun or a pronoun in the subject; as,
  - 1. The harp that played so sweetly is now silent.
  - 2. He who feels noble will be noble.
  - 3. They will be defiled that touch pitch.
- 4. The lever which moves the world of mind is the printingpress.



- 2. An adjective clause may modify a noun in the predicate; as,
  - 1. This is the man that performed the task.
  - 2. These are the times that try men's souls.



- 3. An adjective clause may modify a noun in any of the modifying elements; as,
  - 1. I found the place to which you referred me.
  - 2. Hail to the chief who in triumph advances.
- 3. The thirteen colonies were welded together by the measures which Samuel Adams framed.



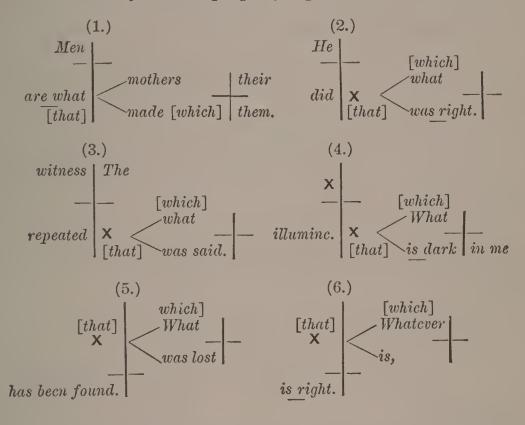
4. An adjective clause is sometimes introduced by the relative what, which in many cases has a double construction.

See the following sentences:

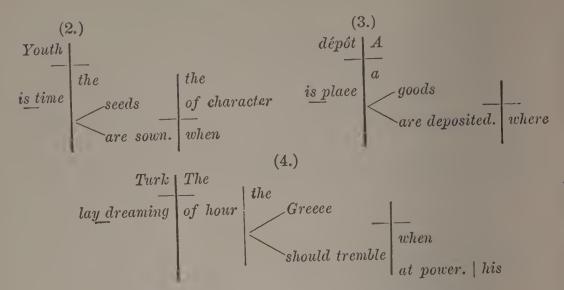
- 1. Men are what their mothers made them.
- 2. He did what was right.

- 3. The witness repeated what was said.
- 4. What is dark in me illumine.
- 5. What was lost has been found.
- 6. Whatever is, is right.

NOTE.—In the following diagrams what is equivalent to that which; this is indicated by placing that and which in brackets, to show that they are not properly a part of the sentence.

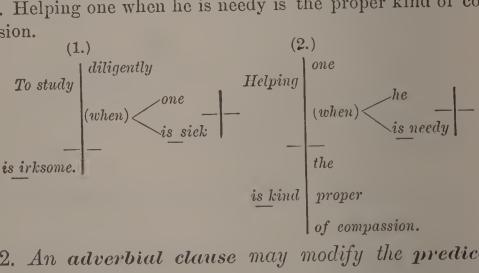


- 5. An adjective clause is sometimes introduced by a relative adverb; as,
  - 1. They returned to Twickenham, where they met Pope.
  - 2. Youth is the time when the seeds of character are sown.
  - 3. A dépôt is a place where goods are deposited.
- 4. The Turk lay dreaming of the hour when Greece should tremble at his power.

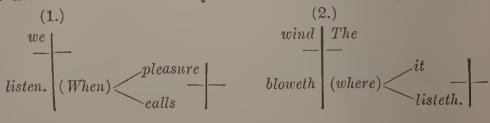


#### THE ADVERBIAL CLAUSE.

- 1. An adverbial clause may modify the subject of a sentence when the subject consists of a participle or a verb in the infinitive mode.
  - 1. To study diligently when one is sick is irksome.
- 2. Helping one when he is needy is the proper kind of compassion.

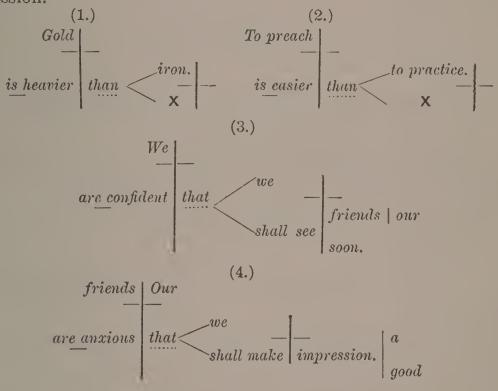


- 2. An adverbial clause may modify the predicate verb of a sentence.
  - 1. When pleasure calls we listen.
  - 2. The wind bloweth where it listeth.
  - 3. I will remain here till you return from the city.



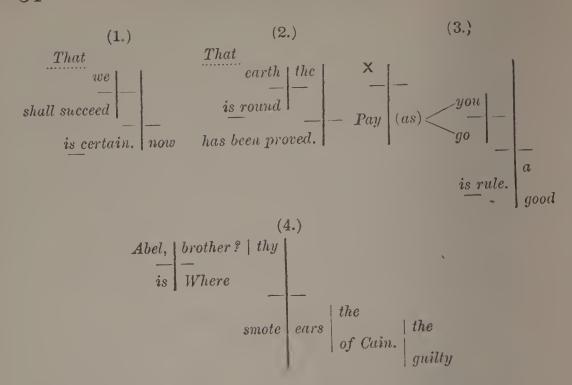
$$\begin{array}{c|c} I & & \\ \hline - & \\ here \\ \hline (till) & \hline - \\ return & from city. \mid the \end{array}$$

- 3. An adverbial clause may modify the attribute.
- 1. Gold is heavier than iron.
- 2. To preach is easier than to practice.
- 3. We are confident that we shall see our friends soon.
- 4. Our friends are anxious that we shall make a good impression.



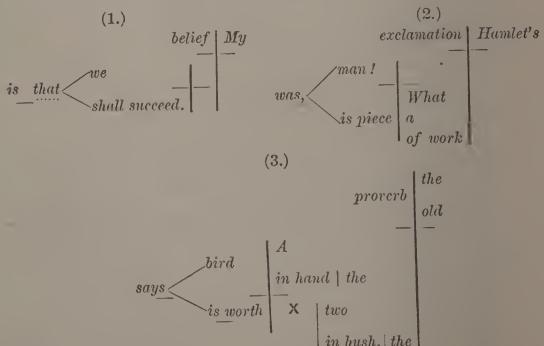
#### THE NOUN CLAUSE.

- 1. A noun clause may be used as the subject of a sentence.
  - 1. That we shall succeed is now certain.
  - 2. That the earth is round has been proved.
  - 3. "Pay as you go" is a good rule.
- 4. "Where is Abel, thy brother?" smote the ears of the guilty Cain.



# 2. A noun clause may be used as an attribute.

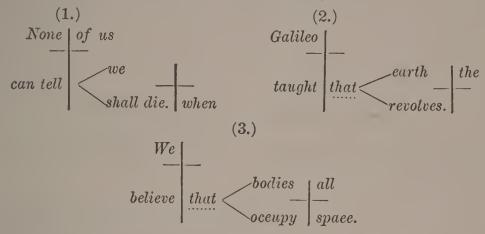
- 1. My belief is that we shall succeed.
- 2. Hamlet's exclamation was, "What a piece of work is man!"
- 3. "A bird in the hand," says the old proverb, "is worth two in the bush."



NOTE.—x indicates the omission of the word "birds."

### 3. A noun clause may be an objective modifier.

- 1. None of us can tell when we shall die.
- 2. Galileo taught that the earth revolves.
- 3. We believe that all bodies occupy space.

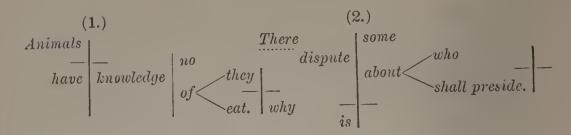


# 4. A noun clause may be used as an explanatory modifier or adjective element.

- 1. It is certain that we shall succeed.
- 2. It has been proved that the earth is round.
- 3. Shakespeare's metaphor, "Night's candles are burnt out," is one of the most beautiful in literature.

# 5. A noun clause may be used as the object of a preposition.

- 1. Animals have no knowledge of why they eat.
- 2. There is some dispute about who shall preside.



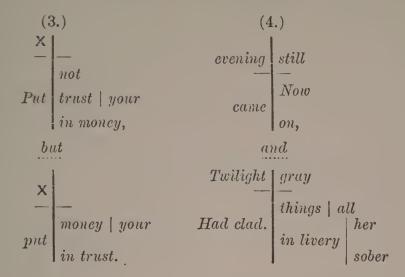
### COMPOUND SENTENCES.

A Compound Sentence is one that contains two or more principal propositions.

The principal propositions may be either simple or complex. When simple, they are analyzed and diagrammed in the same manner as simple sentences. The connective is indicated by dotted lines.

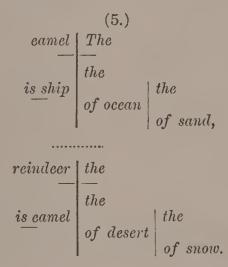
#### See the following:

- 1. The sun shone and the ice melted.
- 2. The boys will bring the evergreens, and the girls will decorate the schoolroom.
  - 3. Put not your trust in money, but put your money in trust.
  - 4. Now came still evening on, and Twilight gray Had in her sober livery all things clad.



5. The camel is the ship of the ocean of sand, the reindeer is the camel of the desert of snow.

Note.—In this sentence the connective, being omitted, is indicated by dotted lines, .......



When the propositions of a compound sentence are *complex*, they are analyzed and diagrammed in the same manner as *complex sentences*.

- 1. Full many a gem of purest ray serene

  The dark unfathomed caves of ocean bear;

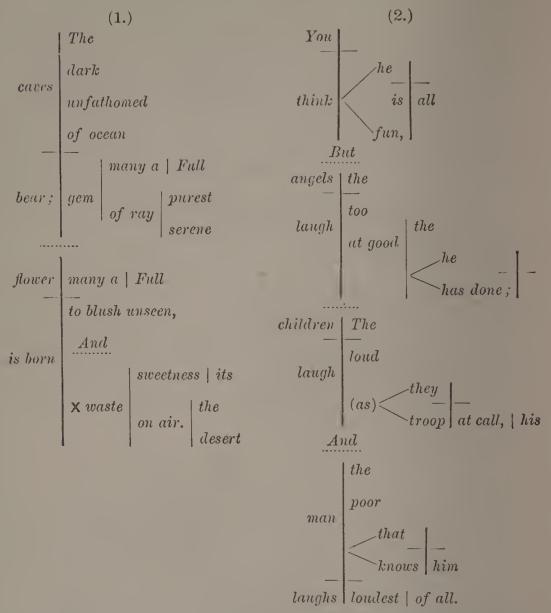
  Full many a flower is born to blush unseen,

  And waste its sweetness on the desert air.
- You think he's all fun,

  But the angels laugh too at the good he has done;

  The children laugh loud as they troop at his call,

  And the poor man that knows him laughs loudest of all.



Note.—In example 2 all is an adverb modifying the copula 's or is.

#### INDEPENDENT ELEMENTS.

The independent parts of sentences neither modify nor connect.

The independent parts are—

- 1. Nouns and Pronouns in the Nominative Case Independent or Absolute.
  - 2. Interjections.
  - 3. Independent Adverbs.

1. The following sentences illustrate the Nominative Case Independent:

1. (By address.) My father, must I stay?

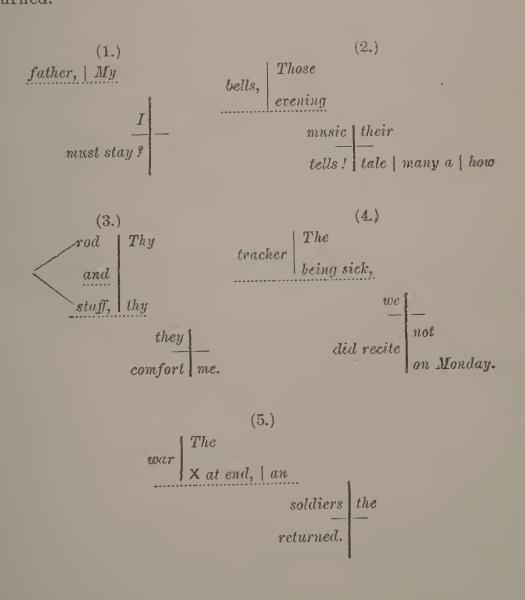
2. (By exclamation.) Those evening bells, how many a tale their music tells!

3. (By pleonasm.) Thy rod and thy staff, they comfort me.

The following are by some writers said to be in the Nominative Case Absolute:

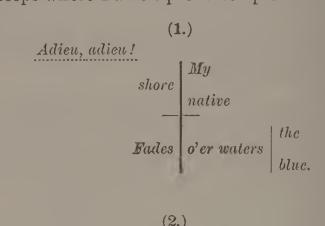
4. (Before a participle.) The teacher being sick, we did not recite on Monday.

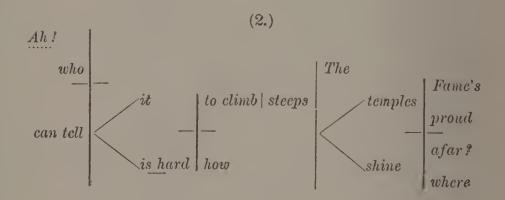
5. (Participle omitted.) The war at an end, the soldiers returned.



- 2. The following sentences illustrate the use of the Interjection:
  - 1. Adieu, adieu! My native shore Fades o'er the waters blue.
  - 2. Ah! who can tell how hard it is to climb

    The steeps where Fame's proud temples shine afar?





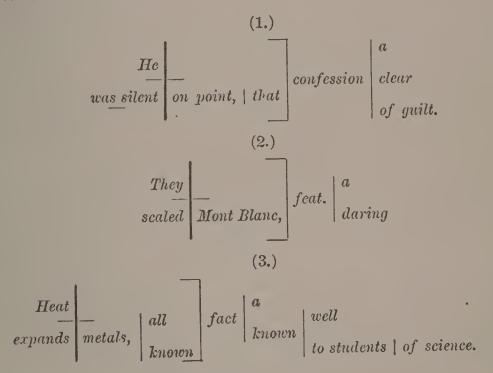
- 3. The following sentences illustrate the use of the Independent Adverb:
  - 1. Well, we have finally succeeded.
  - 2. There were six of us in the boat.
  - 3. Yes, he will come.
  - 4. Now, there is at Jerusalem, by the sheep-market, a pool.

$$\begin{array}{c|c} (1.) & (2.) \\ \hline \textit{Well,} & \textit{There} \\ \hline we & \\ \textit{have succeeded.} & \textit{finally} & \textit{were} & \textit{in boat.} \mid \textit{the} \\ \end{array}$$

#### APPOSITION.

Sometimes a word is in apposition with a clause.

- 1. He was silent on that point, a clear confession of guilt.
- 2. They scaled Mont Blanc, a daring feat.
- 3. Heat expands all known metals, a fact well known to students of science.



## INTRODUCTORY NOTE.

In considering the difficulties presented by the many sentences in the following pages, it must be borne in mind that no effort is made to discuss all the words and relations. Many of the sentences contain but a single difficulty; others, two or three; and some, many more. It is the aim of the author to discuss briefly those only which present difficult points to the ordinary student or teacher of English grammar.

Some of the sentences present no complicated structure whatever: most of such sentences have been omitted, because a discussion of them could be of no possible benefit to any one who knows anything on the subject.

The author is well aware that exceptions may be taken to some of the positions he assumes, but the offices of words in some cases shade so imperceptibly into each other that there may be an honest difference of opinion, and no one can claim infallibility for his own decisions. Frequently two persons in reading a sentence get different meanings from the same expression. In that case either may be correct, according to the interpretation put on the sentence.

Sentences should be interpreted liberally, and not according to the dictum of any one author on Grammar. For this reason the following pages contain only hints and helps on the subject, and not arbitrary decisions. They are meant to be an aid to the private student and to the teacher of Grammar, who has not always the time or opportunity to examine authorities on each construction.

## SENTENCES

#### FROM

#### RAUB'S PRACTICAL ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

Note.—The first number preceding each sentence in the following pages indicates the page; the second, the number of the sentence. The comment in each case follows the example.

45—2. He that loveth God will do diligence to please God by his works.

Diligence, a noun, object of will do.

45—8. When death strikes down the innocent and young, for every fragile form from which he sets the parting spirit free, a hundred virtues rise, in shapes of mercy, charity, and love, to walk the world and bless it.

Innocent and young are nouns in the objective after strikes down, a complex verb. Spirit is a noun, in the objective after the complex verb sets free. World is a noun, in the objective after to walk.

45—9. The little I have seen of the world, and known of the history of mankind, teaches me to look on the errors of others in sorrow, and not in anger.

Little is a noun, in the nominative to teaches. Which understood is the direct object of have seen and known. To look modifies teaches. Not modifies the phrase in sorrow.

45-10. The busy click of machinery, the merry ring of the

anvil, the lowing of peaceful herds, and the song of the harvest-home, are sweeter music than the pæans of departing glory or songs of triumph in war.

Pwans is a noun, in the nominative to are understood. Songs is a noun, in the nominative to are understood.

46—12. The breaking waves dashed high
On a stern and rock-bound coast,
And the woods against a stormy sky
Their giant branches tossed.

High is an abverb, modifying dashed. Woods is a noun, in the nominative to tossed. Branches is a noun, in the objective after tossed.

46—14. The sea, the sea, the open sea,

The blue, the fresh, the ever free;

Without a mark, without a bound,

It runneth the earth's wide regions round.

Sea, sea, sea are nouns, in the nominative independent by pleonasm.

50—21. The wall was built solid. We painted the door white. Solid is a predicate adjective, after was built. White is a factitive adjective, after painted.

53—1. Evil thoughts are more dangerous than wild beasts.

Beasts is a noun, in the nominative case to are understood.

53—2. There is no better relief to study than the regular performance of special duties in the house.

There is an independent adverb. Relief is a noun, in the nominative to is. Performance is a noun, in the nominative to is understood.

54—4. On the grassy bank stood a tall waving ash, sound to the very top.

Ash is the subject of the sentence. Sound is an adjective, modifying ash.

54---5. A happy life means prudent compromise.

Compromise is a noun, in the objective after means.

54—6. A cheerful temper, joined with innocence, will make beauty attractive, knowledge delightful, and wit good-natured.

Attractive is a factitive adjective, referring to beauty. Delightful is a factitive adjective, referring to knowledge. Good-natured is a factitive adjective, referring to wit.

54—8. A wide, rich heaven hangs above you, but it hangs high. A wide, rough world is around you, and it lies very low.

High is a predicate adjective, referring to it. Low is also a predicate adjective, referring to it.

54—9. New occasions teach new duties;

Time makes ancient good uncouth,

They must upward still, and onward,

Who would keep abreast the truth.

Uncouth is a factitive adjective referring to good. Go is understood after must. Abreast is a predicate adjective referring to who. Truth is in the objective after keep abreast.

59—4. People seem to improve when they have no model but themselves to copy after.

Themselves is a pronoun, in the objective after but used as a preposition. To copy after modifies model.

59—6. He that has his own troubles and the happiness of his neighbors to disturb him has work enough.

He is a pronoun, in the nominative to has, in second line.

59—7. When my eyes shall be turned to behold for the last time the sun in heaven, may I not see him shining on the broken and dishonored fragments of a once-glorious Union!

I is a pronoun, in the nominative to may see. Shining is a participle, modifying him.

59—8. The sea is His, and He made it.

His is a pronoun, having the possessive form, but in the nominative case after is.

60—11. Mine be a cot beside the hill.

Mine is a personal pronoun, in the nominative to may be, may being understood.

60—12. His is that language of the heart In which the answering heart would speak.

His, a pronoun, is in the nominative to is.

64—1. What we learn in our youth grows up with us, and in time becomes a part of the mind itself.

What is a relative pronoun having a double construction; it is in the objective after learn, and in the nominative to grows and becomes. Part is a noun, in the nominative after becomes. Itself is a pronoun, in the objective by apposition with mind.

64—2. There are men who always fail in whatever they undertake, simply because they are always behind time.

Whatever is a pronoun having a double construction; it is in the objective after in, and in the objective after undertake.

64-3. Grace is to the body what good sense is to the mind.

What is a pronoun having a double construction; it is in the nominative after is; also in the nominative after the second is.

65—5. He who every morning plans the transactions of the day, and follows out that plan, carries on a thread which will guide him through the labyrinth of the most busy life.

He is a pronoun, in the nominative to carries. Who is a pronoun, in the nominative to plans and follows out, the latter being a complex verb. Morning is a noun, in the objective after a preposition understood.

65—6. My sword and yours are kin.

Yours is a pronoun, in the nominative to are.

65—7. He that doth not know those things which are of use for him to know is but an ignorant man, whatever he may know besides.

He is a pronoun, in the nominative to is. Whatever is a pronoun, in the objective after may know.

65—8. Ethics is the science of the laws which govern our actions as moral agents.

Agents is in apposition with our, in the possessive. As is a conjunction, connecting the words in apposition.

65-9. Most men know what 1 they hate, few what 2 they love.

What is a pronoun having a double construction; it is in the objective after know, also in the objective after hate. What is a pronoun having a double construction: it is in the objective after know understood, also in the objective after love.

65—10. The troops entered the Alhambra, the gates of which were wide open, and all its splendid courts and halls silent and deserted.

Open is a predicate adjective, referring to gates. Wide is an adverb, modifying open. Silent and deserted are predicate adjectives, referring to courts and halls.

65—12. Life! I know not what thou art,
But know that thou and I must part;
And when, or how, or where we met,
I own to me's a secret yet.

Life is a noun, in the nominative independent. What is a pronoun, in the objective after know, and in the nominative after art. Secret is a noun, in the nominative after is.

65—16. Whoever thinks a faultless piece to see,
Thinks what ne'er was, nor is, nor e'er shall be.

Whoever is a pronoun having a double construction; it is in the nominative to thinks in each line. What is a pronoun, in the objective after thinks, and in the nominative to was, is, and shall be.

65—17. O little hands, that, weak or strong,
Have still to serve or rule so long,
Have still so long to give or ask—
I, who so much with book and pen
Have toiled among my fellow-men,
Am weary, thinking of your task.

I am weary, thinking, etc. is the main clause. Thinking modifies I. Hands is a noun, in the nominative independent.

97—1. My lord, you know I love you.

Lord is a noun, in the nominative independent.

97—5. It is said that many an unlucky young urchin is induced to run away from his family, and betake himself to a seafaring life, from reading the history of Robinson Crusoe.

All that follows said is explanatory of it, which the clause modifies. Many an is a complex adjective, modifying urchin. Betake is a verb in the infinitive mode, modifying is induced.

97—6. The best part of our knowledge is that which teaches us where knowledge leaves off and ignorance begins.

Us is the indirect object of teaches. Leaves off is a complex verb, agreeing with knowledge.

97—8. It is excellent discipline for an author to feel that he must say all he has to say in the fewest possible words.

To feel is a verb in the infinitive mode, explanatory of it. The clause beginning with that is the direct object of to feel.

97—11. As we proceeded, the timid approach of twilight became more perceptible.

Perceptible is a predicate adjective after became.

97—12. The aim of education is to show our youth the broad line of demarcation between the value of those things which can be owned by but one, and those which can be owned and enjoyed by all.

To show is a verb in the infinitive mode, used here as an attribute. Youth is the indirect object of to show. Those in last line is an adjective pronoun, in the objective after of understood.

97—13. The mistletoe hung on the castle-hall,
The holly branch shone on the old oak wall,
And the baron's retainers were blithe and gay,
And keeping their Christmas holiday.

Blithe and gay are predicate adjectives, referring to retainers. Keeping = were keeping.

98—14. The old mayor climbed the belfry tower,

The ringers ran by two, by three,

"Pull! if ye never pulled before;

Good ringers, pull your best," quoth he.

Two, three, used as nouns, are in the objective after by. Ringers, fourth line, is a noun in the nominative independent. Best is an adjective, modifying a noun understood. He is a pronoun, in the nominative to quoth.

98—15. Be still, and gaze thou on, false king!
And tell me what is this.

King, a noun, is in the nominative independent. What, a pronoun, is in the nominative after is, this being the subject.

103—2. Elocution, in order to be perfect, must convey the meaning clearly, forcibly, and agreeably.

Perfect is an adjective, used abstractly after to be.

103—4. It is interesting to notice how some minds seem almost to create themselves, springing up under every disadvantage.

Interesting is a predicate adjective after is. To notice, a verb in the infinitive mode, is explanatory of the subject it. Seem is a verb, agreeing with minds. To create is a verb in the infinitive mode, modifying seems. Springing is a participle, referring to minds.

103.—5. Without labor, what is there? Without it, there were no world itself.

There is an independent adverb; also there. Were is a verb in the subjunctive mode, agreeing with world.

104—6. In vain imagination seeks to extend itself in our cultivated fields; it everywhere meets the habitations of men.

In vain is an adverbial phrase, modifying seeks.

104—7. Education, to accomplish the ends of good government, should be universally diffused.

To accomplish modifies should be diffused.

104—9. Once Switzerland was free! With what a pride I used to walk these hills, look up to heaven, And bless God that it was so!

Once is an adverb, modifying was. What is an adjective, modifying pride. Used is a verb, agreeing with I. To walk is a verb, modifying used. Look is a verb in the infinitive mode, modifying used. Bless is a verb in the infinitive mode, modifying used. That it was so is a modifier of bless.

104—10. While I nodded, nearly napping, suddenly there came a tapping,

As of some one gently rapping, rapping at my chamber door.

Napping is a participle, modifying I. There is an independent adverb. Tapping is a participal noun, in the

nominative to came. Rapping is a participle, modifying one. As is a conjunction = as (if it were the sound) of some one, etc.

108—2. Everything good in man leans on what is higher.

Everything is a noun, in the nominative to leans. Good is a predicate adjective after is understood = Everything (that is) good, etc. What is a pronoun, in the objective after on, and in the nominative to is.

108—4. One by one the objects of our affection depart from us.

One by one may be taken as a complex adverb, meaning successively, or it may be expanded to "one followed by one."

108—6. As a rule, the hottest water of the Gulf Stream is at, or near, the surface.

As seems to be used here as a preposition, the phrase as a rule modifying a participle, (probably regarded) understood.

108—7. My life is like the summer rose

That opens to the morning sky,

But, ere the shades of evening close,

Is scattered on the ground—to die.

Like is an adjective, referring to life. Rose is a noun, in the objective after a preposition understood. Ere is a conjunctive adverb, connecting the clauses. To die is a verb, modifying is scattered.

109—8. They sat in silent watchfulness the sacred cypresstree about.

Cypress-tree is a noun, the object of the preposition about.

109—9. Poor wanderers of a stormy day, From wave to wave we're driven.

Wanderers, a noun, is in apposition with we.

111—1. Death is at all times solemn, but never so 1 much so 2 as at sea.

So<sup>2</sup> is an adjective used instead of the word solemn. Much is an adverb, modifying so.<sup>2</sup> So<sup>1</sup> is an adverb modifying much. As is a conjunctive adverb, as at sea being a contraction of a subordinate proposition, "as it is at sea."

111—2. But the recorded experience and wisdom of others may be of the greatest aid and benefit to us.

But is an introductory conjunction. Aid and benefit are nouns, in the objective after the preposition of.

111—3. Inaction is the symbol of death, if it is not death itself.

If is a subordinate conjunction, connecting the subordinate to the principal clause. Itself is a pronoun, in apposition with death.

111—5. Let not the emphasis of hospitality be in bed and board, but let truth and love and honor and courtesy flow in all thy deeds.

Flow is a verb in the infinitive mode, modifying let.

111—6. The characteristic peculiarity of *Pilgrim's Progress* is,<sup>1</sup> that it is <sup>2</sup> the only work of its kind which possesses a strong human interest.

NOTE.—All that follows is is the attribute of the main clause.

112—7. And now, farewell! Time unrevoked has run His wonted course, yet what I wished is done.

Unrevoked is an adjective, modifying time. What is in the objective after wished, and in the nominative to is done.

112—8. But who the melodies of morn can tell?

But is an introductory conjunction. Melodies is a noun, in the objective after can tell.

112—1. Ha! laugh'st thou, Lochiel, my vision to scorn?

Lochiel is a noun, in the nominative case independent.

Vision, a noun, is the direct object of laugh'st.

112—3. Oh soothe him whose pleasures like thine pass away.

Like is a conjunctive adverb; pass away is understood after pleasures. Thine is here used as the subject of pass away understood.

113—5. Oh, it is excellent

To have a giant's strength; but it is tyrannous

To use it like a giant.

To have, a verb in the infinitive, is explanatory of it in the first line, and is used as an adjective element. To use is a verb in the infinitive, explanatory of it in the second line. Like is a conjunctive adverb. Giant is a noun, in the nominative to uses understood.

113—6. Adieu, adieu! My native shore Fades o'er the waters blue.

Blue is an adjective, modifying waters.

113—7. Farewell, farewell to thee, Araby's daughter!

Daughter is a noun in the nominative independent.

. 116—1. It is not labor that makes things valuable, but their being valuable that makes them worth laboring for.

Labor is a predicate nominative after is. That makes things valuable is explanatory of the subject it and modifies it. Valuable is a factitive adjective, referring to things. It is is understood before their being valuable. That makes, etc. is explanatory of it understood in the second main clause. Worth (makes worth) is a factitive adjective referring to them. Laboring for is a complex participle, used as a noun, following a preposition understood.

116—2. Science, art, literature, philosophy,—all that man has done,—the experience that has been bought with the sufferings of a hundred generations,—all have been garnered up for us in the world of books.

Science, art, literature, philosophy, and experience are subjects of have been garnered up. All and all are adjective pronouns, in apposition with the subjects. That (in the first line) is in the objective after has done.

116—3. It is pity that, commonly, more care is had—yea, and that among very wise men—to find out rather a cunning man for their horse than a cunning man for their children.

That 1 is a subordinate conjunction, connecting the clauses. Yea is an independent adverb. That 2 is an adjective pronoun referring to a noun understood. The omission is probably (care is had) among, etc. To find out = ascertain, is a verb in the infinitive, modifying care. Rather, an adverb, is a modifier of to find out. Man 1 is object of the verb to find out. Than is a conjunction, connecting clauses. Man 2 is object of the verb to find out, understood.

117—4. Our work is a divine work. We carry on what God began. What a glorious spectacle is that of the labor of man upon the earth! Look around and tell me what you see that is worth seeing that is not the work of your hands 1 and the hands 2 of your fellows,—the multitude of all ages.

Carry on is a complex verb, agreeing with we. What (first line) is object of carry on and of began. What (second line) is an adjective, limiting spectacle. Upon the earth modifies labor. What (third line) is an adjective pronoun, object of see. Worth is a predicate adjective after is. Seeing, used as a noun, is in the objective after a preposition understood. Hands is in apposition with fellows.

117—5. Whatever we see or perceive in heaven or on earth is the product of labor. The sky above us, the ground beneath us, the air we breathe, the sun, the moon, the stars, what are they? The product of labor. They are the labors of the Omnipotent, and all our labors are but a continuance of His.

What is in the nominative after are. They is in apposition with sky, ground, air, etc. Product is a noun, in the nominative after are understood. His is a pronoun, in the objective after of.

117-7. Men are but children of a larger growth.

But is an adverb, modifying are.

117—8. What nothing earthly gives or can destroy,

The soul's calm sunshine and the heartfelt joy,
Is virtue's prize.

What is subject of is and object of gives and can destroy. Sunshine is in the nominative by apposition with the antecedent part of what. Joy is in the nominative by apposition with the antecedent part of what. Prize is a noun, in the nominative after is.

117—9. The soul, secured in her existence, smiles At the drawn dagger, and defies its point.

Secured is a participle, modifying soul.

117—10. Ill fares the land, to hastening ills a prey, Where wealth accumulates and men decay.

Ill is an adverb, modifying fares. Where is a relative adverb equivalent to in which. Prey is a noun, in apposition with land.

117—11. He is the freeman whom the truth makes free,
And all are slaves beside.

Free is a factitive adjective, referring to whom. All is an adjective pronoun, the subject of the second member. Beside is an adjective, relating to all.

117—12. Variety's the spice of life,
That gives it all its flavor.

It is in the objective after to understood. Flavor is the direct object of gives.

117—13. 'Tis distance lends enchantment to the view, And robes the mountain in its azure hue.

Lends is a verb, agreeing with that understood. (That) lends enchantment, etc. modifies it ('t).

117—14. Our birth is but a sleep and a forgetting;

The soul that rises with us, our life's star,

Hath had elsewhere its setting,

And cometh from afar.

But is an adverb, modifying is. Star is in apposition with soul. Afar is an adverb used as a noun, in the objective after from.

117—15. Call not that man wretched who, whatever ills he suffers, has a child to love.

Wretched is a factitive adjective, referring to man. Whatever is an adjective, modifying ills. Ills is a noun, in the objective after suffers. To love is a verb in the infinitive, modifying child.

118—16. They say, "This shall be," and it is, For ere they act they think.

The object of say is "This shall be." Ere is a conjunctive adverb, connecting they think and they act. For is a subordinate conjunction connecting the clauses.

118—17. The enemy, having his country wasted, what by himself and what by the soldiers, findeth succor in no place.

Having is a participle, modifying enemy. Wasted is a participle, modifying country. What and what are adverbs, meaning partly, and modify the phrases by himself and by soldiers.

118—18. Love, and love only, is the loan for love.

Love 2 is a noun, in apposition with love. Only is an adjective, modifying love.

118—19. "Banished¹ from Rome!" What's banished,² but set free

From daily contact of the things I loathe?

Banished is a participle, modifying I understood. Banished is a predicate participle (attribute). But (except) is a preposition. Set free is a complex participle, used as a noun in the objective after but.

118—20. Hard by a cottage chimney smokes From betwixt two aged oaks.

Hard by is a complex adverb, modifying smokes. From betwixt is a complex preposition, showing the relation between oaks and smokes.

118—21. Good-bye, proud world! I'm going home; Thou art not my friend, and I'm not thine.

Good-bye is an interjection. Home is an adverb. By some it is given as a noun in the objective without a governing word. Thine is a pronoun, in the nominative after am.

118—22. So live, that when thy summons comes to join
The innumerable caravan, which moves
To that mysterious realm where each shall take
His chamber in the silent halls of death,
Thou go not, like the quarry slave at night,
Scourged to his dungeon, but, sustained and soothed
By an unfaltering trust, approach thy grave
Like one who wraps the drapery of his couch
About him, and lies down to pleasant dreams.

So is an adverb, modifying live. Where is a relative adverb, equivalent to in which. That (first line) is a

conjunction (So live, that thou go, etc.) Like (fifth line) is an adverb (like the quarry slave goes). Sustained and soothed are participles, modifying thou. Like (eighth line) is a conjunctive adverb (Like one approaches, etc.).

#### KINDS OF SENTENCES.

121-6. "But why do you go?" said the lady.

A declarative sentence, containing an interrogative clause.

124-9. "Shall I have naught that is fair?" saith he, "Have naught but the bearded grain?"

A complex sentence, containing two interrogative subordinate clauses.

124—10. A man of real merit is never seen in so favorable a light as through the medium of adversity.

A complex sentence with an abridged subordinate clause, "as (he appears when he is seen) through the medium of adversity."

124—13. Soldier, rest! thy warfare o'er,
Dream of fighting fields no more.

This is a compound sentence.

125—17. Life bears us on like the stream of a mighty river.

A complex sentence, containing the two clauses, "*Life bears us on*" and "the stream of a mighty river (bears us on)," connected by the conjunctive adverb like.

130—1. Without knowledge there can be no sure progress. *There* is an independent adverb.

130—2. The Golden Rule contains the very life and soul of politeness.

Of politeness modifies both life and soul.

130—4. On the diffusion of education among the people rest the preservation and perpetuation of our free institutions.

Preservation and perpetuation are both modified by of institutions.

130—5. The hardest way of learning is by easy reading.

The predicate is is by reading, by reading being a phrase attribute.

130—7. Reading without purpose is sauntering, not exercise.

The expression not exercise expanded means (It is) not exercise.

130—8. There is a tide in the affairs of men Which, taken at the flood, leads on to fortune.

Tide is the subject, and is the predicate. There is an independent adverb. Taken, etc. modifies which.

131—3. Fatigue generally begins, and is always increased, by calculating in a minute the exertion of hours.

By calculating modifies begins and is increased.

131—4. Honor lies in doing well whatever we find to do.

Doing is modified by well, and by the objective clause we find whatever to do.

132—6. Language is the amber in which a thousand precious thoughts have been safely imbedded and preserved.

Is amber is the predicate. Amber is modified by the subordinate clause, "a thousand precious thoughts have been safely imbedded and preserved in which." A thousand is by some given as a complex adjective, modifying thoughts. Properly the preposition of is understood after thousand (a thousand of thoughts).

132—8. A great man is always willing to be little.

Always modifies is. To be little modifies willing.

132—9. But who the melodies of morn can tell? But is an introductory conjunction.

132—10. The smallest bark on life's tempestuous ocean Will leave a track behind for evermore.

Behind is an adverb, modifying will leave. For evermore is an adverbial phrase, modifying the predicate will leave.

132—1. The best-laid plans, the most important affairs, the fortunes of individuals, the weal of nations, honor, life itself, are daily sacrificed because somebody is behind time.

The subjects are plans, affairs, fortunes, weal, honor, and life. Itself is in apposition with life. Behind time is a phrase attribute, referring to somebody.

132—2. The vine-clad cottage of the hillside, the cabin of the woodsman, and the rural home of the farmer are the true citadels of any country.

Citadels is a noun attribute after are.

132—3. The ocean, the mountains, the clouds, the heavens, the stars, the rising and setting sun, all overflow with beauty.

Rising and setting are adjectives modifying sun. All is an adjective pronoun, in apposition with ocean, mountains, etc., and a modifier of these.

133—4. No arch nor column in courtly English, or courtlier Latin, sets forth the deeds and the worth of the Father of his country.

Sets forth is the predicate. It is modified by the phrases in English and (in) Latin. The phrase of Father modifies both deeds and worth.

133—5. The sorrow for the dead is the only sorrow from which we refuse to be divorced.

The clause we refuse to be divorced from which modifies sorrow.

133—7. Honor and shame from no condition rise;
Act well your part, there all the honor lies.

This is a compound sentence. The second line is complex, the subordinate clause being (for) there all the honor lies.

133—8. The more we live, more brief appear Our life's succeeding stages.

Our modifies life's, and life's modifies stages. Appear brief, equivalent to are brief, is the predicate. The connective of the subordinate clause is understood; we is the subject and live, the predicate; more, an adverb, modifies live, and the, an adverb, modifies more.

135—1. A¹ cottage flower gives honey to the bee—a² king's garden, none to the butterfly.

 $A^1$  modifies flower and  $a^2$  modifies king's. Gives is understood in the second clause.

135—3. Energy is the steam-power, the motive principle, of intellectual capacity.

Principle is a noun, in apposition with steam-power.

135—4. The charities of life are scattered everywhere, enameling the vales of human beings as the flowers paint the meadows.

Enameling modifies charities. The clause "as the flowers paint the meadows" modifies enameling.

135—7. Hang around your walls pictures which shall tell stories of mercy, hope, courage, faith, and charity.

The subject in this sentence is understood. Stories is modified by the phrases of mercy, (of) hope, (of) courage, (of) faith, and (of) charity.

135—8. Make your living-room the largest and most cheerful in the house.

Largest and cheerful are factitive adjectives, the predicate is therefore make largest and cheerful.

135—9. Those who contract thoughtless and rude habits toward members of their own family will be rude and thoughtless to all the world.

Rude and thoughtless (in second line) are both predicate adjectives.

135—10. While we commend the character and example of Washington to others, let us not forget to imitate it ourselves.

· Us is the direct object, with ourselves in apposition. (To) forget modifies the verb let.

135—11. The books which help you most are those which make you think most.

Note.—See page 21 for the analysis of this sentence.

135—12. A man is the happier through life for having once made an agreeable tour or lived for any length of time among pleasant people.

Having made is a participle, used as a noun after the preposition for. The is an adverb, modifying happier. Lived is equivalent to having lived.

135—13. True, conscious honor is to feel no sin;
He's armed without that's innocent within.

To feel is an attribute after is.

136—14. The stars shall fade away, the sun himself
Grow dim with age, and Nature sink in years;
But thou shalt flourish in immortal youth,
Unhurt amid the war of elements,
The wreck of matter, and the crash of worlds.

Himself, in apposition with sun, is an adjective modifier. Grow dim is equivalent to shall grow dim, dim being an attribute; shall grow is equivalent to shall become. Unhart is an adjective, modifying thou.

136—17. Know then this truth, enough for man to know—Virtue alone is happiness below.

Truth is modified by the clause in apposition, Virtue alone is happiness below. Alone is an adjective, modify-

ing virtue. Below is an adverb, modifying is. Enough modifies truth. By some authorities enough is given as part of an abridged clause (which to know is enough for man).

136—19. There Honor comes, a pilgrim gray,

To deck the earth that wraps their clay.

Pilgrim is in apposition with Honor, the subject.

138—1. Blessed be the hand that prepares a pleasure for a child! for there is no saying when and where it may again bloom forth.

Hand is the subject of the sentence. For there is no saying, etc. is the subordinate clause, modifying be blessed. The subject of the subordinate clause is saying, modified by no, and by the clause it may bloom forth again when and where.

138—2. Lying is a great sin against God, who gave us a tongue to speak the truth, and not falsehood.

To speak modifies gave. Not modifies to speak understood.

138—3. It is the ancient feeling of the human heart that knowledge is better than riches; and it is deeply and sacredly true.

The subject is it, modified by the explanatory clause that knowledge is better than riches (are).

139—4. None are poorer because others are made rich.

Rich is a predicate adjective after are made.

139—8. A lie which is all a lie may be met and fought with outright.

But a lie which is half a truth is a harder matter to fight.

All is an adverb, modifying is, in the sense of wholly. The predicate verbs in the first clause are may be met (with) and may be fought with. Outright is an adverb,

modifying the predicate verbs. In the second member the predicate is is half, half being modified by (of) truth.

139—9. Mortals that would follow me, Love Virtue; she alone is free.

Alone is an adjective, modifying she.

140—1. It is faith in something, and enthusiasm for something, that make a life worth looking at.

It is the subject, modified by the explanatory clause, that make, etc. The predicate of the subordinate clause is make worth, worth being a factitive adjective. Life is the direct object of make worth. Looking at is a complex participle, used as a noun, object of a preposition understood.

140—2. If we work upon marble, it will perish; if we work upon brass, time will efface it; if we rear temples, they will crumble into dust.

The clauses in these members are all transposed, the subordinate clause coming first.

140—3. Hope, only Hope, of all that clings Around us, never spreads her wings.

The second word *Hope* is in apposition with the subject *Hope*. Of all that clings around us modifies the subject.

140—4. Better for a man to possess manners than wealth, beauty, or talent.

This sentence expanded is equivalent to (It is) better for a man to possess manners than (it is good to possess) wealth, etc. The subject it is modified by to possess manners. In the second clause, the understood subject (it) is modified by (to possess) wealth, beauty, or talent.

140—5. It is better to inspire the heart with a noble sentiment than to teach the mind a truth of science.

It, the subject, is modified by the explanatory phrase to

inspire, etc. The subject of the second part of the sentence is it understood (it is good). The phrase to teach, etc. modifies the subject.

140—6. Nature is full of freaks, and now puts an old head on young shoulders, and then a young heart beating under four-score winters.

Then modifies puts understood. Under fourscore winters also modifies puts understood. Beating, a participle, modifies heart.

140—7. When a deed is done for freedom, through the broad earth's aching breast

Runs a thrill of joy prophetic, trembling on from east to west.

Trembling modifies thrill, the subject of the chief clause. On, an adverb, modifies trembling. The modifies earth's.

141—1. The savage believed that to every man there is an appointed time to die.

The clause introduced by that is the direct object of believed. There is an independent adverb.

141—2. Montezuma displayed all the energy and enterprise in the commencement of his reign which had been anticipated from him.

The clause which had been, etc. modifies energy and enterprise.

141—3. Bunyan is almost the only writer that ever gave to the abstract the interest of the concrete.

Almost, an adverb, modifies only.

141—4. We admire the great deeds of Howard's benevolence, and wish that all men were like him.

In the subordinate clause, the predicate is were like, the preposition to being understood before him.

141—5. One of the illusions is, that the present hour is not the critical, the decisive hour.

All that follows the first is is the attribute of the main clause.

141—6. Ye have heard that it hath been said, An eye for an eye, and a tooth for a tooth.

Heard is modified by all that follows as an objective clause element. It is modified by the explanatory clauses, An eye (shall be given) for an eye, and a tooth (shall be given) for a tooth.

141—7. Rivers will always have a shingly shore to play over, where they may be shallow, and foolish, and childlike; and another steep shore, under which they can prance and purify themselves, and get their strength of waves fully together for due occasion.

To play over modifies shore. Shore is modified also by the clause introduced by where, a relative adverb. The attribute is compound. In the second clause the predicates are can prance, (can) purify, and (can) get together = (can concentrate).

Oh joy! that in our embers
Is something that doth live—
That Nature yet remembers
What was so fugitive!

This sentence is equivalent to Oh (it is) joy, etc., the subject being it understood, which is modified by the clause, that something is in our embers that doth live. That doth live modifies something. It is modified also by That Nature yet remembers, etc.

147—2. Religion is the most gentlemanly thing in the world.

In world is an adjective element, modifying thing.

147—3. Earnestness alone makes life eternity.

Alone modifies earnestness. Eternity is a factitive noun, the predicate being makes eternity = (immortalizes).

147—6. How sweet the moonlight sleeps upon this bank!

Sleeps sweet, equivalent to is sweet, is the predicate.

147-8. Composition is the flowering out of a man's mind.

Is flowering out is the predicate, is being the copula, and flowering out, a complex participle, the attribute.

147—10. Westward the course of empire takes its way.

Way is the direct object of takes.

147—11. An effort made for the happiness of others lifts us above ourselves.

Made, a participle, modifies effort.

147-12. Leisure is time for doing something useful.

Something is the direct object of doing. Useful modifies the noun something.

147—15. In character, in manners, in style, in all things, the supreme excellence is simplicity.

The phrases, in character, in manners, in style, in things, all modify the subject excellence.

147—18. Beauty itself is but the sensible image of the Infinite.

Itself is in apposition with the subject beauty. Only modifies the copula is.

147—19. Night, sable goddess, from her ebon throne In rayless majesty now stretches forth Her leaden sceptre o'er a slumbering world.

Goddess, an adjective element, is in apposition with night. Stretches forth, a complex verb, is the predicate.

147—20. The splendor falls on castle-walls And snowy summits old in story.

Old modifies both castle-walls and summits.

147—21. Among the pitfalls in our way
The best of us walk blindly.

Best is the subject, and walk, the predicate.

147—23. Politeness is not always a sign of wisdom.

Not modifies always.

148—26. True politeness is the spirit of benevolence showing itself in a refined way.

Showing modifies spirit.

148—27. The end of learning is to know God, and out of that knowledge to love Him and to imitate Him.

The attribute in this sentence is compound, consisting of the three infinitives, to know, to love, and to imitate. Out of that knowledge modifies to love and to imitate.

148—28. The chief art of learning is to attempt but little at a time.

Is to attempt is the predicate, to attempt being the attribute. But, an adverb, modifies little; little modifies a noun understood.

148—29. The spacious firmament on high,
With all the blue ethereal sky
And spangled heavens, a shining frame,
Their great Original proclaim.

The subject of the sentence is compound, consisting of firmament and heavens. With all the blue ethereal sky modifies firmament. Proclaim is the predicate, and Original, the direct object. Frame is in apposition with the compound subject.

150—1. Tears are the softening showers which cause the seed, of heaven to spring up in the human heart.

The subordinate clause, which cause, etc., modifies showers. To spring up is a complex verb, modifying cause.

150—4. Nothing is troublesome that we do willingly.

That we do willingly modifies nothing. That is the direct object of do.

150—5. The best part of our knowledge is that which teaches us where knowledge leaves off and ignorance begins.

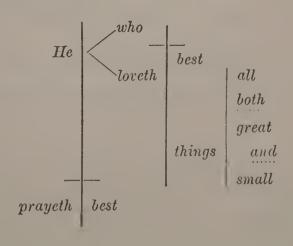
That is an attribute, modified by the subordinate clause, which teaches, etc. Us is an adverbial modifier = teaches (to) us. The direct objects of teaches are the two clauses, knowledge leaves off where and ignorance begins (where). Leaves off, the first predicate, is a complex verb.

One sweetly solemn thought
Comes to me o'er and o'er—
That I'm nearer my home to-day
Than I've ever been before.

Sweetly modifies solemn. That I am nearer, etc. is a modifier of thought. Home = (to home), modifies nearer. Nearer is modified also by the clause, than I have ever been before. O'er and o'er is a complex adverb, modifying comes.

He prayeth best who loveth best All things, both great and small.

Who loveth best modifies He, the subject of the main clause. Both and and are correlatives. The diagram may be indicated as follows:



150—10. They are never alone that are accompanied by noble thoughts.

Are alone is the predicate of the main clause. They is modified by the clause, that are accompanied, etc.

150—11. He struck a blow in the world that resounded through the universe.

In the world modifies struck.

150—12. Beauty is the mark God sets on virtue.

God sets on virtue modifies mark. Which is understood after mark.

150—13. The books which help you most are those which make you think most.

Note.—See page 21 for the diagram of this sentence.

150—14. Whene'er a noble deed is wrought,
Our hearts in glad surprise
To higher levels rise.

The subordinate clause, the first line, modifies the verb rise.

150—15. No man who needs a monument ever ought to have one.

Ought is the predicate, modified by the infinitive to have, as an adverbial element.

151-17. The eternal stars shine out as soon as it is dark enough.

Shine out is the predicate, a complex verb. As soon as is the connective, a complex conjunctive adverb. Enough modifies dark.

151—18. No one who has once heartily and wholly laughed can be altogether irreclaimably deprayed.

Altogether modifies irreclaimably.

This is truth the poet sings,

That a sorrow's crown of sorrow is remembering happier things.

The clause, the poet sings (which), modifies the subject this, as an explanatory clause. The whole of the second line also modifies this, as a subordinate adjective clause. Remembering is a participal attribute. A modifies sorrow's.

151—20. Cursed be the social lies that warp us from the living truth.

Be cursed is the predicate, and lies, the subject.

151—22. How blessings brighten as they take their flight!

As is a conjunctive adverb, introducing the subordinate

clause.

151—23. The poorest education that teaches self-control is better than the best that neglects it.

Best may be taken as the subject of the subordinate clause with is as a predicate understood, or education understood may be taken as the subject, in which case best becomes an adjective modifier.

## COMPOUND SENTENCES.

In war he mounts the warrior's steed;
In war he mounts the warrior's steed;
In halls in gay attire is seen,
In hamlets, dances on the green.
Love rules the court, the camp, the grove,
And men below, and gods above;
For love is heaven, and heaven is love.

In peace modifies tunes. In war modifies mounts. He, understood, is the subject in both the third and the fourth line. Below is an adjective element, modifying men. Above is an adjective element, modifying gods. The last line modifies rules, the predicate of the last three lines.

153—4. Be not ashamed of thy virtues; honor is a good brooch to wear in a man's hat at all times.

The subject in this sentence is understood. Be ashamed is the predicate, ashamed being an adjective attribute. To wear is an adjective element, modifying brooch. A modifies man's.

153—5. You hear that boy laughing? You think he's all fun,

But the angels laugh too at the good he has done; The children laugh loud as they troop at his call, And the poor man that knows him laughs loudest of all.

Note.—See page 38 for the diagram of this sentence.

153—6. Now came still evening on, and twilight gray Had in her sober livery all things clad.

NOTE.—See page 37 for the analysis of this sentence.

153—7. The accusing spirit which flew up to Heaven's chancery with the oath, blushed as he gave it in; and the recording angel, as he wrote it down, dropped a tear upon the word and blotted it out for ever.

Up modifies flew. In modifies gave. As, a conjunctive adverb, connects the clauses. As he wrote it down modifies dropped. Dropped and blotted out is the compound predicate of the second member. For ever is a prepositional phrase, used to modify blotted out, adverbially.

153—8. God's livery is a very plain one, but its wearers have good reason to be content.

To be content modifies reason.

154—9. Method is the hinge of business, and there is no method without order and punctuality.

There is an independent adverb. Without order, etc. modifies is. Without has two objects, order and punctuality.

154—10. The proper study of mankind is man;
The most perplexing one, no doubt, is woman.

The diagram of the second member may be given as follows:

## GENERAL EXERCISES.

156—1. Green be the turf above thee,
Friend of my better days!
None knew thee but to love thee,
None named thee but to praise.

The predicate of the first line is (may) be green, may being understood, and may be being the copula. Above thee modifies turf. Line 2 is independent in construction. But to love (except to love or without loving) modifies knew, as an adverbial element. But to praise is an adverbial element, modifying named.

156—2. Education is a better safeguard of liberty than a standing army.

Is safeguard understood is the predicate after army.

156—3. Lives of great men all remind us

We may make our lives sublime,

And, departing, leave behind us

Footprints on the sands of time.

All is in apposition with lives. Sublime is a factitive adjective, makes sublime being the predicate of the first subordinate clause. The subject of the second subordinate clause is we, which is modified by the participle departing. On sands modifies may leave.

156—4. But words are things; and a small drop of ink,
Falling like dew upon a thought, produces
That which makes thousands, perhaps millions, think.

But is an introductory conjunction. Falling, a participle, modifies drop. Like, a conjunctive adverb, introduces the subordinate clause, like dew (falls). Upon a thought modifies falling. Makes think is the predicate of the clause in the third line, in which (to) think is a factitive infinitive. Perhaps millions, think = "perhaps it makes millions think." Perhaps, an adverb, modifies makes understood. Millions is the direct object of (makes) think.

156—5. 'Twas in autumn, and stormy and dark was the night,
And fast were the windows and doors.

In the second member stormy and dark form a compound attribute.

156—6. He is worthy of honor who willeth the good of every man; and he is much unworthy thereof who seeketh his own profit and oppresseth others.

The subject He is modified by the clause beginning who willeth, etc. In the second member, the subject he is modified by the subordinate clause, who seeketh, etc. Unworthy is modified by much and thereof.

157—7. The more we live, more brief appear
Our life's succeeding stages;
A day to childhood seems a year,
And years like passing ages.

The subject of the first member is stages, the predicate is appear brief, appear being a copula. More,<sup>2</sup> an adverb, modifies brief. The, an adverb, modifies more.<sup>1</sup> The more we live is a subordinate clause, modifying appear; we being the subject, live, the predicate. More, an adverb, modifies live, and the, an adverb, modifies more.<sup>1</sup> In

the third line the predicate is seems year. In the last line, years (seem) like (unto) passing ages, like is an adjective attribute.

157—8. The widest excursions of the mind are made by short flights, frequently repeated.

Repeated, a participle, modifies flights.

157—9. I know not what course others may take; but, as for me, give me liberty or give me death.

What is in the objective after take; it also limits the noun course. In the second member, as for me is probably equivalent to as regarded for me, in which as is introductory, and regarded is modified by the phrase for me; all of the expression is independent.

157—10. We live in an age in which cultivated mind is becoming more and more the controlling influence in affairs.

More and more is a complex adverb, modifying is becoming, the copula of the predicate is becoming influence.

157—11. The contemplation of beauty in nature, in art, in literature, in human character, diffuses through our being a soothing and subtle joy by which the heart's anxious and aching cares are softly smiled away.

The phrases in nature, in art, in literature, in character, modify beauty. The subordinate clause, by which the heart's anxious, etc., modifies joy. Are smiled away, the predicate of the subordinate clause, is modified by softly and by which.

157—12. Full many a gem of purest ray serene

The dark, unfathomed caves of ocean bear;

Full many a flower is born to blush unseen,

And waste its sweetness on the desert air.

Gem, the direct object, is modified by the complex adjective many a; also by the phrase of ray. Full, an adverb, modifies the adjective many a. Purest and serene

are adjectives, modifying ray. In the second half of the stanza, many a modifies flower, and full modifies many a. To blush unseen is an adverbial element, modifying is born; the expression being equivalent to to be unseen, in which unseen is an abstract adjective after to be. On air modifies (to) waste.

Note.—See page 38 for the diagram of this sentence.

157—13. When all thy mercies, O my God,
My rising soul surveys,
Transported with the view, I'm lost
In wonder, love, and praise.

The expression O my God is independent. I, the subject of the main clause, is modified by transported, etc. The predicate, am lost, is modified by the phrases in wonder, (in) love, (in) praise, and by the subordinate clause, When all, etc.

157—14. If I were not a preacher, I know of no profession on earth of which I should be fonder than that of a preceptor.

On earth modifies profession. The second subordinate clause, which is equivalent to the following: I should be fonder of which than (I am fond of) that of a preceptor, also modifies profession. In the first subordinate clause, which modifies fonder, the predicate is were preacher, not modifying were.

157—15. He who will determine against that which he knows, because there may be something which he knows not, is not to be admitted among reasonable beings.

The clause, which he knows, modifies the word that. In the second subordinate clause, beginning with because there may be, etc., something is the subject; it is modified by he knows not which. To be admitted is the attribute of the main proposition. 157—16. Ah, that deceit should steal such gentle shapes,
And with a virtuous visor hide deep her vice!

Both subject and predicate of the main clause of this sentence are understood. It is probably equivalent to Ah, (how sad it is) that deceit should steal such gentle shapes, etc., in which the subordinate clause modifies the subject it understood, being explanatory. Hide deep, equivalent to (should) hide deep; is a part of the compound predicate, deep being a factitive adjective, referring to vice.

157—17. Nothing is proof against the general curse Of vanity that seizes all below;

The only amaranthine flower on earth
Is virtue; the only lasting treasure, truth.

That seizes, etc. modifies curse. Below, an adjective, modifies the adjective pronoun all. Only properly modifies the expression amaranthine flower, but in diagraming it must be placed next to flower as the basis. In the last member is is understood before truth.

159—1. To persevere in one's duty and to be silent is the best answer to calumny.

The subject is compound, consisting of to persevere and to be silent. Silent is used abstractly after to be.

159-2. Men are but children of a larger growth.

But, an adverb, modifies are. Children is a noun attribute.

159—4. All are but parts of one stupendous whole, Whose body Nature is, and God the soul.

But is an adverb, modifying are. In the first subordinate clause, Nature is the subject; in the second, God. The predicate is is understood in the last clause. Both clauses modify whole. 159—5. When vice prevails and impious men bear sway,

The post of honor is the private station.

The two clauses, When vice prevails and (when) impious men bear sway, modify is.

159—6. To read without reflecting is like eating without digesting.

To read is the subject. Is like is the predicate, like being a predicate adjective, followed by a preposition understood, of which eating, used as a noun, is the object.

159—7. How beautiful is night!

A dewy freshness fills the silent air,

No mist obscures, nor cloud, nor speck, nor stain,

Breaks the serene of heaven.

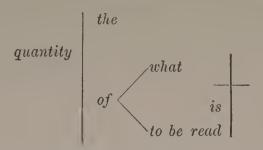
In the fourth clause the subject is compound, consisting of cloud, speck, and stain. "Nor—nor" is used by poetic license for neither—nor.

159-8. If fun is good, truth is better, and love best of all.

The first main clause is *Truth is better*; better is modified by if fun is good. Is is understood after love. In the last clause is best is the predicate.

160—9. As concerns the quantity of what is to be read, there is a single rule: Read much, but not many works.

This is equivalent to As (it) concerns, etc. Rule is the subject of the main clause. There is an independent adverb. As is a conjunction introducing the subordinate clause, of which it understood is the subject, and concerns, the predicate. Of what is to be read modifies quantity, of being the preposition, and the clause being the object of the preposition. This portion of a diagram may be indicated as follows:



To be read is an infinitive attribute. The clause, Read much, etc., has for its subject thou understood, the whole clause being explanatory of rule, which word it modifies.

163—1. For thou art Freedom's now, and Fame's—
One of the few, the immortal names,
That were not born to die.

These three lines form a subordinate clause. They are preceded properly by the following:

And even she who gave thee birth Will, by their pilgrim-circled hearth, Talk of thy doom without a sigh;

The subject she and the predicate will talk are both found in these latter lines. In the example given, for is the connective; the attribute is compound, consisting of the three predicate nominatives Freedom's, Fame's, and one. To die modifies were born. Not modifies the infinitive to die.

163—2. Be just and fear not.

Let all the ends thou aim'st at be thy country's,

Thy God's, and truth's.

The subject of the first sentence is thou understood. Of the second sentence, thou understood is also the subject. Ends, the direct object, is modified by the clause, thou aim'st at. Let is modified also by the infinitive phrases (to) be thy country's, (to be) thy God's, and (to be) truth's, in which country's, God's, and truth's are modifiers of the word ends understood.

163—3. An atheist's laugh's a poor exchange for Deity offended.

Atheist's is in the possessive, limiting laugh. Laugh's is equivalent to laugh is; offended modifies Deity.

163—4. I dread thee, Fate, relentless and severe, With all a poet's, husband's, father's fear.

Fate, relentless and severe, is independent. Fear is modified by all, poet's, husband's, and father's.

163—5. Tired Nature's sweet restorer, balmy sleep!

Note.—This is not a sentence. Sleep is in apposition with restorer.

163—6. Ye are Christ's, and Christ is God's.

Christ's is the attribute or predicate nominative in the first member, and God's is the predicate nominative in the second.

163-7. Each thinks his own the best pretension.

Pretension is understood after own, and to be is understood before the. To be pretension modifies thinks, adverbially.

163—8. There is something in their hearts which passes speech.

Which passes speech modifies something.

163—9. Land of the beautiful and brave,

The freeman's home, the martyr's grave,

The nursery of giant men,

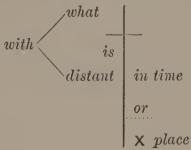
Whose deeds are linked with every glen!

My own green land for ever!

The first four lines of this selection are independent, with the word land as a basis. Home, grave, and nursery are in apposition with land. The subject and the copula of the last line are both understood (Thou art). For ever modifies art.

163—10. It is a noble faculty of our nature which enables us to connect our thoughts, our sympathies, and our happiness with what is distant in place or time.

It, the subject, is modified by all that follows the word nature. To connect modifies the verb enables, as an adverbial element. With what is distant, etc. is a phrase modifier, having a clause for its basis. It may be written as follows:



166—1. If we retrench the wages of the schoolmaster, we must raise those of the recruiting sergeant.

The main clause begins with we must raise, etc. Those may be taken as the direct object of must raise.

166—2. A guileful heart makes a guileful tongue and lips.

Tongue and lips are direct objects of the predicate makes; both are modified by guileful.

166—3. He who waits to do a great deal of good at once will never do anything.

To do modifies waits, and is modified by the noun deal and the phrase at once.

166—4. I pray the prayer of Plato old:
God make thee beautiful within,
And let thine eyes the good behold
In everything save sin!

Prayer is the direct object of pray. All that follows the first line is in apposition with prayer, modifying it adjectively. Make beautiful, equivalent to (may) make beautiful, is the predicate of the first subordinate clause, beautiful being a factitive adjective. In the second sub-

ordinate clause the subject is understood; (may) let is the predicate, having for its direct object eyes. (To) behold modifies let. Everything is modified by the phrase, save sin. Good is here used as a noun, the object of behold.

166—5. Put not your trust in money, but put your money in trust.

The subject in each member is understood. Not modifies the verb put.

166—6. If you are about to strive for your life, take with you a stout heart and a clear conscience, and trust the rest to God.

The first clause is subordinate, modifying the verb take, the predicate of the first member. Heart and conscience are direct objects of take. In the subordinate clause the predicate is are about to strive, are being the copula and about to strive a phrase attribute.

166—8. He that filches from me my good name,
Robs me of that which not enriches him,
And makes me poor indeed.

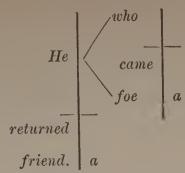
The clause, That filches, etc., modifies he. Some authorities claim that and connects the two verbs robs and makes poor, while others claim that it connects the two subordinate clauses, which not enriches him and (which) makes me poor indeed. The latter seems preferable.

166—9. Lorenzo, these are thoughts that make man man.

Lorenzo is in the nominative independent. The predicate of the main clause is are thoughts; thoughts is modified by the clause, that make man' man,² of which the predicate is make man.² The first word man is the direct object; the second is a factitive noun used in the predicate.

166-10. He returned a friend who came a foe.

This sentence is equivalent to *He became a friend who* was a foe. Both verbs are neuter verbs in this sentence, and are therefore used as copulas. The diagram may be given as follows:



168—1. Friends, Romans, countrymen! lend me your ears! Friends, Romans, and countrymen are all in the nominative independent; me is the indirect object, and ears the direct object. You, understood, is the subject.

168—2. Those evening bells! those evening bells! How many a tale their music tells!

Those evening bells is independent; the second those evening bells is in apposition with the first. Many a, a complex adjective, modifies tale, and how modifies many a.

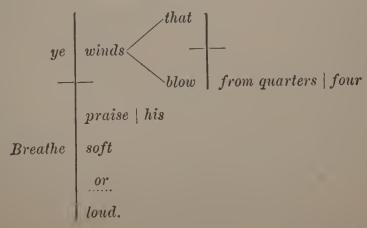
168—3. Her wheel at rest, the matron thrills no more With treasured tales and legendary lore.

Her wheel (being) at rest is independent in construction.

More, an adverb, modifies thrills, and no modifies more.

168—4. His praise, ye winds that from four quarters blow, Breathe soft or loud, and wave your tops, ye pines.

Winds is in apposition with ye; the diagram for the first part is as follows:



In the next member pines is in apposition with ye.

168—5. I being in the way, the Lord led me to the house of my master's brethren.

I being in the way is independent in construction, in way modifying being. My modifies master's.

168-6. A horse! a horse! my kingdom for a horse!

A horse! a horse! is independent in construction. The remainder is equivalent to (I will give) my kingdom for a horse.

168—8. O thou that rollest above, round as the shield of my fathers, whence are thy beams, O sun?

This sentence contains two independent parts; the first being the whole of the first line, and the second, O sun. In the first, above, an adverb, modifies rollest; round, which modifies thou, is modified by the clause as the shield of my fathers (is round). Whence modifies are.

168—9. O Caledonia! stern and wild,

Meet nurse for a poetic child!

Land of the brown heath and shaggy wood,

Land of the mountain and the flood,

Land of my sires! What mortal hand

Can e'er untie the filial band

That knits me to thy rugged strand?

The independent part of this sentence includes all ending with the word sires in the fifth line. Caledonia is modified by stern, wild, and the four words in apposition, nurse, Land, Land, Land. Land in the third line is modified by the phrase of heath and wood, the object of the preposition being compound. Land in the fourth line is modified by the phrase of mountain and flood. The subject of the sentence is hand, modified by what and mortal. E'er modifies can untie, the predicate.

169—10. My friends, do they now and then send A wish or a thought after me?

My friends is independent in construction; now and then is a complex adverb, modifying send.

169—11. Thou too sail on, O ship of State! Sail on, O Union, strong and great!

In the first sentence, O ship of State is independent; on, an adverb, modifies sail. In the second sentence, O Union, strong and great, is independent; on, an adverb, modifies sail.

171-1. There is no policy like politeness.

There is an independent adverb. Policy is the subject of the sentence; is like is the predicate, in which like is the attribute. Like is modified by the phrase (unto) politeness.

171—2. Every great man is always being helped by everybody, for his gift is to get good out of all things and all persons.

Is being helped is the predicate; it is modified by always, by everybody, and the subordinate clause beginning with for. In the subordinate clause is to get is the predicate, to get being the attribute. Good, used here as a noun, is the direct object. Out of is a complex preposition. Out of things and (out of) persons are both adverbial modifiers of get.

171—3. When Freedom from her mountain-height
Unfurled her standard to the air,
She tore the azure robe of night,
And set the stars of glory there.

The predicate of the main clause, which embraces the last two lines, is compound, consisting of tore and set. Stars is the direct object of set, and robe is the direct object of tore. In the subordinate clause, which modifies the predicate, the phrase from her mountain-height modifies unfurled.

171—4. Overhead the dismal hiss
Of fiery darts in flaming volleys flew.

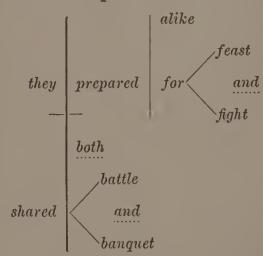
Hiss is the subject of the sentence. Overhead modifies flew. In flaming volleys modifies darts.

171—5. The window jingled in its crumbled frame,
And through its many gaps of destitution
Dolorous moans and hollow sighings came,
Like those of dissolution.

The subject of the main clause of the second member is compound, consisting of moans and sighings. Came, the predicate, is modified by through its many gaps, etc., and by the clause, like those of dissolution (come). Like is here a conjunctive adverb. Come, the predicate, is understood.

171—6. Alike for feast and fight prepared,
Battle and banquet both they shared.

The diagram is best represented as follows:



Prepared is a participle, modifying they; alike is an adverb, modifying prepared; prepared is modified also by the prepositional phrase for feast and fight. Both and and are correlative conjunctions; battle and banquet is the compound object.

171—7. At his touch crowns crumbled, beggars reigned, systems vanished.

The predicate in each of the three clauses is modified by the phrase at his touch.

171—8. Soldiers! from yonder pyramids forty generations of men look down upon you.

Soldiers is independent in construction. Look is modified by down, upon you, and from yonder pyramids.

171—9. The bell strikes one. We take no note of time but from its loss.

One is the direct object of strikes. But from loss modifies take, but being a preposition followed by the phrase object from loss.

171—10. Presently the brook came to a spot where men had thrown hard stones in its way, obstructed its course, turned it aside through a narrow channel, and forced it to rush in a confused, perilous way over a wheel.

The predicate came is modified by the phrase to spot; spot is modified by the four subordinate clauses, men had thrown, etc., (men had) obstructed, etc., (men had) turned it aside, etc., and (men had) forced it, etc. To rush modifies forced, and is itself modified by in way and over wheel. Where in line 1 is a relative adverb.

I love thy kingdom, Lord The house of thy abode.

Lord is in the nominative independent. House is in apposition with kingdom.

173—2. We, the people of the United States, . . . do ordain and establish this Constitution.

People is in apposition with we, the subject. Constitution is object of both ordain and establish.

173—3. O Music, sphere-descended maid, Friend of Pleasure, Wisdom's aid!

This is not a sentence. Maid, friend, and aid are all in apposition with Music.

173—4. The harp, his sole remaining joy, Was carried by an orphan boy.

Joy is in apposition with harp, the subject. His, sole, and remaining modify joy.

173—5. Company, villanous company, hath been the spoil of me.

The second word *company* is in apposition with the subject *company*. The predicate is *hath been spoil*, of which *hath been* is the copula.

174—6. From bright'ning fields of ether fair disclosed, Child of the Sun, refulgent Summer, comes.

The subject is Summer; child is in apposition with Summer. Brightening modifies fields, as does also the phrase of ether; ether is modified by fair and disclosed.

174-7. Go ye every man unto his city.

Man is in apposition with the subject ye.

174—8. His praise, ye brooks, attune.

Brooks is in apposition with the subject ye.

174—9. They went out one 1 by one.

One<sup>1</sup> is in apposition with they, the subject. By one is a phrase, modifying went. One by one is by some grammarians called a complex adverb.

174—10. Thus shall mankind his guardian care engage,
The promised father of a future age.

Mankind is the subject, and shall engage, the predicate. Thus modifies shall engage. Care is modified by his; his is modified by father, a noun in apposition without the possessive sign.

174—11. Out of this nettle, danger, we pluck this flower, safety.

Out of nettle is a phrase, modifying pluck; nettle is

modified by danger, a noun in the same case by apposition. Flower is the direct object of pluck; safety is in apposition with flower.

176—3. When I was a child I spake as a child.

The natural order of this sentence is, "I spake as a child (speaks) when I was a child." The predicate spake is modified by both subordinate clauses.

176—5. "Behold!" said the streamlet; "to nourish this beauty is the end and aim of my life."

The predicate of the main clause is said. Behold is a verb in the imperative, with its subject understood. To nourish is the subject of the subordinate clause. Is end and aim is the predicate, of which end and aim is a compound attribute, both words, end and aim, being modified by the phrase of life.

176—6. And he returned a friend who came a foe. Note.—See page 82 for this sentence.

176—7. By such a change thy darkness is made light, Thy chaos order, and thy weakness might.

The predicate of the first member is is made light, is made being the copula. In the remaining clauses is made is understood; thus, Thy chaos (is made) order, and thy weakness (is made) might.

176-8. But what! is thy servant a dog?

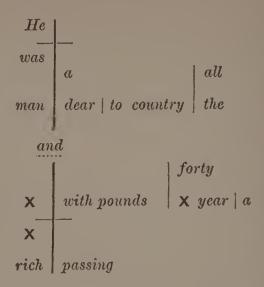
But is an introductory conjunction; what is an interjection. Servant is the subject; is dog is the predicate.

176—9. When pain and anguish wring the brow, A ministering angel thou.

Art angel is the predicate of the main clause, art being understood. Art is modified by the subordinate clause, when pain and anguish wring the brow.

176—10. A man he was to all the country dear,
And passing rich with forty pounds a year.

The following diagram will explain the sentence.



Was is understood before rich; passing is an adverb, modifying rich; a preposition is understood before year.

176—11. Art thou that traitor angel? Art thou he who first broke the peace of heaven?

Thou is the subject, and art angel the predicate, angel being modified by that and traitor. Thou is the subject of the second sentence, and art he the predicate.

Where ignorance is bliss 'Tis folly to be wise.

It, the subject, is modified by the phrase to be wise, in which wise is an abstract adjective. Is, the copula, is modified by the subordinate clause, where ignorance is bliss.

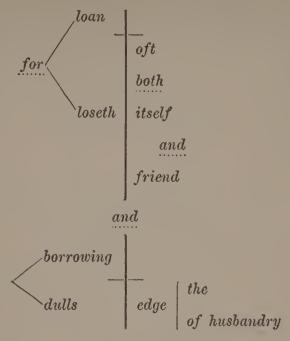
176—13. Neither a borrower nor a lender be.

For loan oft loseth both itself and friend,

And borrowing dulls the edge of husbandry.

The subject is thou understood, and be is the copula. The attribute, borrower nor lender, is compound. Neither and nor are correlative conjunctions. The subordinate

clause, which modifies the predicate, is compound. It may be illustrated in diagram as follows:



180—1. Sloth makes all things difficult, but industry all easy. Makes difficult is the predicate in the first member, in which difficult is a factitive adjective, referring to things. In the second member the predicate is (makes) easy, easy being a factitive adjective.

180—2. A pebble in the streamlet scant

Has turned the course of many a river;

A dewdrop on the infant plant

Has warped the giant oak for ever.

Many a, a complex adjective, modifies river. For ever, a phrase, modifies has warped.

180—3. Set a high price on your leisure moments. Properly expended, they will procure for you a stock of great thoughts.

Thou is the subject of the first sentence. In the second sentence the participle expended modifies they, the subject.

180—4. The true hero is the great wise man of duty. *Is man* is the predicate.

180—5. One of the illusions is, that the present hour is not the critical, decisive hour. Write it on your heart that every day is the best day of the year.

In the first sentence is is the copula, and all that follows, introduced by the conjunction that, is the attribute, which is a clause in itself, having hour for the subject and is hour for the predicate. In the second sentence all that follows heart is explanatory of it, the direct object.

181—6. A dainty plant is the ivy green,

That creepeth o'er ruins old;

Of right choice food are his meals, I ween,

In his cell so lone and cold.

Ivy is the subject; it is modified by the, green, and the subordinate clause, that creepeth, etc. Is plant is the predicate. Of the second member, I is the subject and ween is the predicate, modified by the subordinate clause, of right choice food, etc. Meals is the subject of the subordinate clause, and are of food is the predicate, are being the copula, and of food, the attribute. Cell is modified by his, lone, and cold; in cell modifies meals; and so modifies lone and cold. Choice modifies food, and the adverb right modifies the adjective choice.

181—7. Judges ought to be more learned than witty, more reverend than plausible, and more advised than confident.

Ought, the predicate of the main clause, is modified by the infinitive phrases, to be learned, to be reverend, and to be advised. The subordinate clause modifying learned is than (they are) witty. Than (they are) plausible modifies reverend. Than (they are) confident modifies advised.

184—1. Spring hangs her infant blossoms on the trees, Rocked in the cradle of the western breeze.

Blossoms is modified by the participal phrase, rocked in the cradle, etc. On the trees modifies the predicate hangs. 184—2. With the talents of an angel a man may be a fool.

The subject is man, modified by the phrase with the talents, etc. May be fool is the predicate.

184—3. The things which are impossible with men are possible with God.

Things, the subject, is modified by the subordinate clause, which are impossible. Are possible is the predicate of the main clause.

184—4. The hand is <sup>1</sup> almost valueless at one end of the arm, unless there is <sup>2</sup> a brain at the other end.

At one end modifies hand. Is valueless is the predicate of the main clause, and is 2 of the subordinate clause. At the other end modifies the verb is.2

184—5. The will of the many and their interests must very often differ.

The subject is compound, consisting of will and interests. Many is here used as a noun, modified by the.

184—6. How brilliant and mirthful the light of her eye,
Like a star glancing out from the blue of the sky!

Light is the subject of the main clause, and (is) brilliant and mirthful is the predicate, in which is is understood, the attribute being compound. Like, an adjective, modifies light, and is modified by the phrase (unto) a star. Glancing is a participle, modifying star; out is an adverb, modifying glancing. Blue is here used as a noun in the objective after from.

186—1. This only grant me, that my means may lie Too low for envy, for contempt too high.

The subject is understood. *Grant*, the predicate, is modified by (to) *me*, and by *this*, the direct object. *This* is modified by *only* and by the subordinate clause following *me*. Of the subordinate clause, *that*, a conjunction, is

the connective, means is the subject, and may lie low and (may lie) high form the compound predicate, in which the verbs are copulas.

186—2. They shall every man turn to his own people, and flee every one into his own land.

In the first clause man is in apposition with they, the subject. In the second clause one is in apposition with they, the subject understood.

186—3. All actual heroes are essential men, And all men possible heroes.

In the second clause are is omitted before possible.

187—4. None but the brave deserves the fair.

None is the subject, modified by the phrase but the brave, in which but is a preposition and brave a noun; fair also is here used as a noun.

187—5. All are architects of fate,
Working in these walls of time—
Some with massive deeds and great,
Some with ornaments of rhyme.

Working modifies all, the subject of the first member. Are working is understood after some, in each of the last two lines.

187—6. I dare do all that may become a man; Who dares do more is none.

(To) do modifies dare, the predicate; all is the object of do. All is modified by the subordinate clause, that may become, etc. The predicate of the subordinate clause is may become; man is the direct object. In the second member the subject he is understood; it is modified by the subordinate clause, who dares, etc., of which who is subject and dare is predicate. Dares is modified by (to) do, which is modified by more.

187—7. Every phrase and every figure which he uses tends to render the picture more lively and complete.

The nouns of the compound subject, every phrase and every figure, are modified by the subordinate clause, which he uses. To render lively and (to render) complete are modifiers of tends. Lively and complete are factitive adjectives, referring to picture. More modifies both lively and complete.

187—8. Not every one that saith unto me, Lord! Lord! shall enter into the kingdom of heaven.

One is the subject of the main clause. It is modified by every and the subordinate clause, that saith, etc. Every is modified by not. Lord and Lord are direct objects of saith.

187—9. If your arguments produce no conviction, they are worth nothing to men.

Are worth is the predicate of the main clause. Worth is modified by the phrase (x) nothing, a preposition being understood before nothing. Are is modified by the subordinate clause, if your arguments, etc.

187—10. Honor and shame from no condition rise;
Act well your part, there all the honor lies.

Honor and shame is the compound subject of the first member. Of the second member the subject is understood in the main clause. The connective of the subordinate is for understood; thus, For all the honor lies there.

191—1. Thou art, O God, the life and light Of all this wondrous world we see.

Life and light form a compound attribute, and both words are modified by the phrase of world. The subordinate clause, we see (which), modifies world.

191—2. Yes, child of suffering, thou may'st well be sure He who ordained the Sabbath loves the poor.

Yes is an independent adverb. Child of suffering is also independent in construction. May'st be sure is the predicate, of which sure is an attribute, modified by the subordinate clause, He who ordained, etc. Poor is used here as a noun.

191-3. My son, if sinners entice thee, consent thou not.

Thou is the subject; consent is the predicate, modified by not and by the subordinate clause, If sinners entice thee.

191—4. Though the mills of God grind slowly, yet they grind exceeding small;

Though with patience He stands waiting, with exact-

ness grinds He all.

They is the subject of the first member. Grind small is the predicate, in which small is a factitive, referring to an object understood. Exceeding is an adverb, modifying small. Yet—though are correlatives, introducing the subordinate clause. In the second member grinds, the predicate, is modified by the subordinate clause, though with patience, etc. Stands waiting is equivalent to is waiting, in which waiting is a participial attribute.

191.—5. Our very hopes belied our fears,
Our fears our hopes belied;
We thought her dying when she slept,
And sleeping when she died.

Very modifies hopes. Belied, the predicate, is modified by fears. In the second member belied is modified by hopes. Dying is a participle, modifying her, and sleeping is a participle, modifying her understood.

191—6. This above all, to thine own self be true,
And it must follow, as the night the day,
Thou canst not then be false to any man.

The subject and the predicate of the main clause are

both understood. The predicate is probably observe or remember. Thus, Remember this above all, etc. The predicate verb is modified by the direct object this and by the phrase above all. This, used as an adjective pronoun, is modified by the clause to thine own self, etc., of which the subject is understood; be true is the predicate, modified by to self; self is modified by thine and own. The first subordinate clause is connected with the second by and. In the second clause, it is the subject, modified by the explanatory clause, thou canst not then be false. Canst be false is the predicate, false being the attribute. Must follow, the predicate, is modified by the subordinate clause, as the night (follows) the day.

191—7. These are thy glorious works, Parent of good, Almighty! Thine this universal frame.

Parent of good is independent. Almighty also is independent. In the second member frame is the subject, and (is) Thine, the predicate.

191—8. Thine is the kingdom, and the power, and the glory. Thine is the subject; the compound attribute is kingdom, power, and glory.

191-9. All mine are thine, and thine are mine.

Mine is the subject of the first member; it is modified by all. Are thine is the predicate, of which thine is the attribute, in the nominative after the verb. In the second member thine and mine are both in the nominative, the former as subject and the latter as attribute.

191—10. Alas! they had been friends in youth,
But whispering tongues can poison truth;
And constancy lives in realms above,
And life is thorny, and youth is vain;
And to be wroth with one we love
Doth work like madness on the brain.

Had been friends is the predicate of the first member,

friends being the attribute. In the third member above is an adjective, modifying realms. In the sixth member to be wroth is the subject, wroth being modified by with one, and one being modified by the clause, (whom) we love. Doth work, the predicate, is modified by the subordinate clause like madness (works), in which like is a conjunctive adverb, and works, the predicate, is understood.

194—1. In this world it is not what we take up, but what we give up, that makes us rich.

In the first member it is the subject; it is modified by the explanatory clause that makes us rich, of which makes rich is the predicate, rich being a factitive adjective. In this world modifies take up and give up. Is is modified by not. What, the attribute, has a double construction; it is in the nominative after is and in the objective after take up. In the second member it is is understood; thus, (It is) what we give up, in which what again has a double construction, being in the nominative after is, and in the objective after give up.

194—2. Men are what their mothers made them.

Note.—See page 31 for the analysis of this sentence.

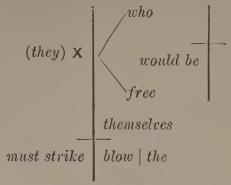
195—4. He's true to God who's true to man.

Who is true to man modifies the subject he.

195---5. The best part of our knowledge is that which teaches us where knowledge leaves off and ignorance begins.

The predicate of the main clause is is that. That is modified by all that follows. Us is the indirect object (to us) of teaches. The direct objects of teaches are knowledge leaves off where and ignorance begins where; leaves off, a complex verb, and begins, being the predicates.

195—6. Who would be free, themselves must strike the blow. The subject of this sentence is *they* understood; the analysis may be indicated as follows:



Themselves is in apposition with the subject understood.

195—7. There is, however, a limit at which forbearance ceases to be a virtue.

Limit is the subject; the predicate is is; there is an independent adverb. The subject is modified by the subordinate clause, at which, etc. However modifies is.

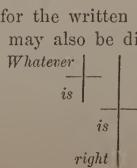
195—8. We should count time by heart-throbs; he most lives Who thinks most, feels the noblest, acts the best.

In the second member he, the subject, is modified by the three clauses who thinks most, (who) feels the noblest, (who) acts the best. In the second of these the predicate is feels noblest, feels being equivalent to a neuter verb. Lives, the predicate of the main clause, is modified by most, an adverb.

195—9. What in me is dark,
Illumine; what is low, raise and support.

195—10. Whatever is, is right.

Note.—See page 31 for the written analysis of both these sentences. Sentence 10 may also be diagramed as follows:



195—11. I hope I shall always possess firmness and virtue enough to maintain what I consider the most enviable of all titles, the character of an honest man.

All that follows hope in the sentence is the direct object. Enough modifies firmness and virtue; to maintain modifies enough, and to maintain is modified by what follows, as a direct object. Consider is modified by what and to be (title), title understood being modified by the, most enviable, and of all titles. Character is in apposition with the antecedent part of what.

195—13. What a rare gift, by the by, is that of manners!

Gift is the subject, modified by what, a, and rare. Is, the copula, is modified by the complex adverb, by the by; that, the attribute, is modified by of manners.

195—14. It is what we ourselves have done, and not what others have done for us, that we shall be remembered by in after ages.

It, the subject, is modified by the explanatory clause, that we shall be remembered by, etc. Remembered is modified by the phrase by that. The predicate of the first member is is what. Ourselves is in apposition with the subject we. In the second member both the subject it and copula is are understood. Not modifies is understood.

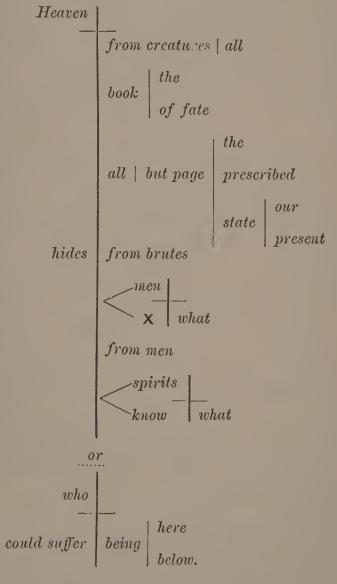
195—15. Heaven from all creatures hides the book of fate,
All but the page prescribed, their present state;
From brutes what men, from men what spirits
know;

Or who could suffer being here below?

Hides, the predicate, is modified by the phrase from all creatures; by the direct object book; by all, etc.; by the phrase from brutes; by the clause what men know; by the phrase from men; and by the clause what spirits know. In the second line all is modified by the phrase but the

page, page being modified by the participle prescribed, and by the noun state in apposition. The two subordinate clauses in their natural order read, men know what and spirits know what. In the last member, could suffer, the predicate, is modified by being, and being is modified by here and below.

Note.—The full diagram is given below.



199—1. To live in hearts we leave behind Is not to die.

To live is the subject. In the subordinate clause, behind, an adverb, modifies leave. Is to die is the predicate, to die being the attribute. Not modifies to die.

199—2. Language is the amber in which a thousand precious thoughts have been safely imbedded and preserved.

Is amber is the predicate of the main clause; it is modified by all that follows. Thoughts is the subject of the subordinate clause, and is modified by a thousand and precious. The predicate of the subordinate clause is have been imbedded and preserved.

200—3. To find some sure interpreter

My spirit vainly tries;

I only know that God is love,

And know that love is wise.

Spirit is the subject; tries is the predicate, modified by vainly and to find. In the third line, know is modified by only and by the clause that God is love. In the fourth line, know is modified by the clause that love is wise.

200—4. The flowers fade, the heart withers, man grows old and dies, the world lies down in the sepulchre of ages; but Time writes no wrinkles on the brow of Eternity.

In the third member, grows old, equivalent to becomes old, is the predicate. In the last member, on brow modifies writes.

200—5. If God send thee a cross, take it up willingly and follow Him.

The subject of the main clause is understood. Take up and follow is the compound predicate, modified by the clause, If God send, etc.

200—6. Heaven is not gained at a single bound;

But we build the ladder by which we rise

From the lowly earth to the vaulted skies,

And we mount to its summit round by round.

Not modifies the phrase at bound. Rise is modified by the phrases by which, from earth, and to skies. Mount is modified by the phrase to summit, and by the phrase (with) round. This phrase is probably modified by the word

followed when the ellipsis is supplied, which in turn is modified by the second phrase, by round.

200—7. Dare to be true; nothing can need a lie; A fault which needs it most grows two thereby.

The subject is understood in the first member. Dare is the predicate, modified by to be true, in which true is an abstract adjective. In the last clause, grows two is equivalent to becomes two. The predicate is grows two, of which two is the attribute. Thereby modifies grows.

200—8. Worth makes the man, and the want of it the fellow. In the second member the word *makes* is understood after *it*.

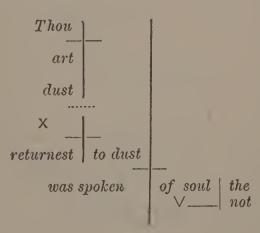
200—9. Life is real! life is earnest!

And the grave is not the goal;

"Dust thou art, to dust returnest,"

Was not spoken of the soul.

The last half of the selection may be diagramed as follows:



200—10. There are moments, I think, when the spirit receives

Whole volumes of thought on its unwritten leaves. Think is the predicate. It is modified by the subordinate clause, There are moments when the spirit, etc. There is an independent adverb. Moments is modified by the

explanatory clause that follows the word think, of which spirits is the subject and receives is the predicate. When is a relative adverb equivalent to in which.

200—11. Mont Blanc is the monarch of mountains;

They crowned him long ago—

On a throne of rocks, in a robe of clouds,

With a diadem of snow.

In the second member, *crowned* is the predicate. Long modifies ago, and ago modifies *crowned*.

203—1. What a tangled web we weave When first we practise to deceive!

The predicate is weave, modified by web, which is modified by what, a, and tangled. Weave is modified also by the subordinate clause, When first, etc. When is the connective. Practise is modified by first and to deceive.

203—2. The Son of man is come to seek and to save that which is lost.

Is come, the predicate, is equivalent to has come. It is modified by the infinitives to seek and to save, which are both modified by the objective that. That is modified by the adjective clause, which is lost.

203-3. His hands refuse to labor.

To labor is in the objective after refuse.

204-4. When thou doest alms, let not thy left hand know what thy right hand doeth.

The subject of the main clause is understood. Let is the predicate; not modifies let; hand is the direct object of let. Let is modified also by (to) know, which is modified by the clause, thy right hand doeth what. Let is modified also by the subordinate clause, When thou doest alms.

204—5. Give me liberty to know, to think, to believe, and to utter freely, according to conscience, above all other liberties.

Give, the predicate, is modified by (to) me, also by liberty and by the phrase above liberties. Liberty is modified by the four infinitives to know, to think, to believe, and to utter. To utter is modified by the phrase, according to conscience, in which according to is a complex preposition.

204—6. "Ah," cried the streamlet, "this is a heavenly light sent to tell me what I wish to know, and to guide my course."

Cried is the predicate, modified by the clause that follows the word streamlet. Ah is an interjection. Sent modifies light, and is in turn modified by to tell and to guide. To tell is modified by the phrase (to) me and by the subordinate clause, I wish to know what.

204-7. Delightful task! to rear the tender thought,
To teach the young idea how to shoot!

This is not a sentence. Both infinitive phrases modify task, being in apposition with it. To shoot modifies to teach.

204—8. Teach me to feel another's woe, to hide the fault I see;

The mercy 1 I to others show, that mercy 2 show to me.

The subject is understood. (To) me modifies teach. The direct objects are to feel and to hide. Fault is modified by I see (which). In the second member mercy  $^2$  is the direct object, modified by the clause, I show to others. Mercy  $^1$  is in apposition with mercy. $^2$ 

204—9. To be or not to be, that is the question.

To be or not to be is independent by pleonasm. That is the subject, and is question, the predicate.

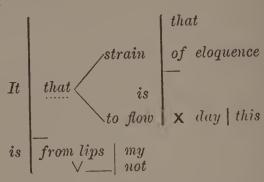
204-10. To reign is worth ambition.

To reign is the subject, and is worth, the predicate.

Ambition is object of a preposition understood.

204—11. It is not from my lips that that strain of eloquence is this day to flow.

See diagram:



204—12. To spend too much time in studies is sloth; to use them too much for ornament is affectation; to make judgment wholly by their rules is the humor of a scholar.

In the first member *much* modifies *time*. In the second member *much* modifies *use*. In the third member *wholly* modifies the phrase *by rules*.

204—13. Read not to contradict and confute, nor to believe and take for granted, nor to find talk and discourse; but to weigh and consider.

The subject of the first member is understood. Not modifies to contradict and (to) confute. The infinitives in the first member all modify read. The phrase for granted modifies take. Granted is a participle used as a noun. In the second member, the predicate read is modified by to weigh and (to) consider.

204—14. Thy Hector, wrapt in everlasting sleep,
Shall neither hear thee sigh, nor see thee weep.

Wrapt is a participle, modifying Hector. Shall hear is modified by thee, which is modified by sigh. (Shall) see is modified by thee, which is modified by weep. Neither and nor are correlative conjunctions.

204-15. To err is human-to forgive, divine.

To crr is the subject of the first member, is human is the predicate. In the second member the copula is understood.

207—1. Life is as tedious as a twice-told tale Vexing the ears of a drowsy man.

The predicate is is tedious. Tedious is modified by the subordinate clause introduced by the conjunctive adverb as. The subject of the subordinate clause is tale; the predicate is understood. Twice-told and vexing modify tale.

207—2. Learning is like a river, whose head, being far in the land, is at first rising little and easily viewed.

Is like is the predicate of the main clause, in which like is a predicate adjective followed by the phrase (unto) a river. River is modified by the subordinate clause, whose head, etc. Being, a participle, modifies head. The phrase in land modifies being. Far modifies the phrase in land. At first rising modifies is. The predicate in the subordinate clause is compound, consisting of is little and is viewed.

207—3. True politeness is the spirit of benevolence showing itself in a refined way.

Showing, a participle, modifies spirit.

207—4. This mournful truth is everywhere confessed: Slow rises worth by poverty depressed.

Truth is the subject. The second line is a subordinate adjective clause, modifying truth. Worth, the subject, is modified by the participle depressed. Slow is an adverb, modifying riscs.

207—5. When a man has not a good reason for doing a thing, he has a good reason for letting it alone.

Of the main clause he is the subject, and has, the predicate. Reason is the direct object of has; it is modified by the phrase for letting alone, alone being a factitive adjective. In the subordinate clause has is the predicate, modified by not and reason. Reason is modified by a, good, and the phrase for doing, doing being used as a participial noun after for.

207—6. Many a word at random spoken

May soothe or wound a heart that's broken.

Many a, a complex adjective, modifies word. Spoken, a participle, modifies word. The predicate of the main clause is compound, consisting of the two predicates, may soothe and (may) wound. Heart is the direct object of the predicate, and is modified by the clause, that is broken.

207—7. Of all the myriad moods of mind

That through the soul come througing,

What one was e'er so dear, so kind,

So beautiful, as longing!

Of the main clause one is the subject. It is modified by what and of moods. The clause, that come througing, etc., modifies moods. Come througing, equivalent to are througing, is the predicate of this clause. The attribute of the chief predicate consists of three simple attributes, dear, kind, and beautiful, modified by the subordinate clause, as longing (is).

207—8. I have no more pleasure in hearing a man attempting wit and failing than in seeing a man trying to leap over a ditch and tumbling into it.

In hearing modifies have; man is the direct object of hearing; attempting and failing are both participles,

modifying man. More is modified by the subordinate clause, than (I have) in seeing a man, etc., in which both subject and predicate are understood. Seeing is used as a participial noun after in. Man is the direct object after seeing. Trying and tumbling modify man. To leap is the direct object of trying.

207—9. A vile conceit in pompous words expressed Is like a clown in regal purple dressed.

Conceit is modified by expressed, a participle. Is like is the predicate, like being an adjective, modified by (unto) clown. Dressed is a participle, modifying clown.

207—10. The heights by great men gained and kept Were not attained by sudden flight.

Heights, the subject, is modified by the participles gained and kept. The phrase by flight modifies were attained. Not modifies the phrase by flight.

207—11. The stoical scheme of supplying our wants by lopping off our desires is like cutting off our feet when we want shoes.

Scheme, the subject, is modified by the phrase of supplying; supplying is modified by the phrase by lopping off, of which lopping off is a complex participle used as a noun. Is like is the predicate, like being modified by the phrase (unto) cutting off, of which cutting off is a complex participle used as a noun.

211—1. Man wants but little here below, Nor wants that little long.

The predicate in this sentence is compound. The first word wants is modified by little, here and below; but is an adverb modifying little in its adjective sense. The second wants is modified by the direct object little and by the adverb long.

211—2. 'Tis not¹ in folly not² to scorn a fool;
And scarce in human wisdom to do more.

The explanatory clause, to scorn, etc. modifies it, the subject. The second word not modifies to scorn. The predicate is is modified by the phrase in folly. Not modifies in folly. Of the second member, to do is the subject, modified by more. The predicate is is understood, and it is modified by in wisdom.

211—3. How sleep the brave who sink to rest By all their country's wishes blessed!

Brave, the subject, is modified by the participle blessed.
All modifies country's.

211-4. It is well to think well; it is divine to act well.

To think well modifies the subject it. Is well is the predicate. To act well modifies the subject it, of the second member.

211—5. Generally, also, a downright fact may be told in a plain way.

Generally, also, and in way modify may be told, as adverbial elements.

- 211—6. Peradventure he is asleep, and must be awakened. Peradventure is an adverb, modifying is.
- 211—7. Loveliest of lovely things are they
  On earth that soonest pass away.

The subject they is modified by the subordinate clause.

Are loveliest is the predicate.

211—9. There is no flock, however watched and tended, But one dead lamb is there.

There is an independent adverb. Watched and tended, participles, modify flock. But is a subordinate conjunction.

212—10. There beamed a smile
So fixed, so holy, from that cherub brow,
Death gazed, and left it there.

There is an independent adverb. Fixed modifies smile; so modifies fixed. The subordinate clause, Death gazed, modifies so. The connective that is understood. There, the last word, modifies left.

212—11. Vice is a monster of so frightful mien,
As, to be hated, needs but to be seen;
But seen too oft, familiar with her face,
We first endure, then pity, then embrace.

As to be hated, etc. modifies so. It understood is the subject of this subordinate clause, and needs is the predicate. To be seen is the direct object of needs, and to be hated modify needs adverbially. The second couplet is equivalent to we (having) seen, etc. Having seen modifies we, the subject. (Being) familiar also modifies we. Endure, pity, and embrace form the compound predicate of the second couplet.

212—12. No man can safely command that has not truly learned to obey.

The subordinate clause modifies man.

212—13. A true good man there was there of religión, Pious and poor, the parson of the town.

The first there is an independent adverb; the second modifies was. Parson is in apposition with man.

212—14. The stronger the mind the greater its ambition.

Ambition is the subject of the main clause; (is) greater is the predicate. Greater is modified by the adverb the, and by the subordinate clause the mind (is) the stronger. The second the is an adverb modifying stronger.

215—1. He that goes <sup>1</sup> a-borrowing goes <sup>2</sup> a-sorrowing. Goes <sup>1</sup> is modified by the phrase at borrowing, and goes, <sup>2</sup> by the phrase at sorrowing a = at being a preposition.

215—2. From peak to peak, the rattling crags among, leaps the live thunder.

Leaps is modified by from peak, to peak and among crags.

215—3. Oh for a lodge in some vast wilderness! Subject and predicate (I long) are omitted.

215—4. As the mountains are round about Jerusalem, so the

Lord is round about his people.

About people modifies is; round modifies the phrase about people. So and as are correlatives, introducing the subordinate clause, in which round modifies about Jerusalem, which phrase modifies are. The first clause is subordinate; the second, principal.

215—5. The quality of mercy is not strained;
It droppeth as the gentle rain from heaven,
Upon the place beneath.

In the second member, as the gentle rain from heaven (droppeth) modifies droppeth. Upon the place beneath also modifies droppeth. Beneath modifies place.

215—6. I hold, in truth, with him who sings

To one clear harp in divers tones,

That men may rise on stepping-stones

Of their dead selves to higher things.

In truth modifies hold. The subordinate clause also modifies hold.

216—7. An effort made for the happiness of others lifts us above ourselves.

Effort, the subject, is modified by made, a participle.

216—8. By ceaseless action all that is subsists.

All, the subject, is modified by the subordinate clause, that is.

216—9. E'en the oak thrives by the rude concussion of the storm.

E'en modifies thrives. According to some authorities,

it may be called an emphatic adverb, modifying the whole sentence.

216—10. And I have made a pilgrimage from far.

And is an introductory conjunction. Far is here used as a noun.

216—11. At midnight, in his guarded tent,

The Turk was dreaming of the hour

When Greece, her knee in suppliance bent,

Should tremble at his power.

Was dreaming, the predicate of the main clause, is modified by at midnight, in tent, and of hour. Hour is modified by the subordinate clause, When Greece, etc. Greece is modified by the phrase (with) knee, and knee is modified by bent. When modifies should tremble.

216—12. Ishmael's wandering race, that rode
On camels o'er the spicy tract that lay
From Persia to the Red Sea coast.

This is not a sentence. Race is modified by all that follows. To coast modifies lay.

216—13. How dear to my heart are the scenes of my childhood,

When fond recollection presents them to view!

Are dear is the predicate of the main clause. The subordinate clause modifies are.

216—14. I bring fresh showers for the thirsty flowers From the sea and the stream.

For flowers modifies bring. From sea and stream also modifies bring.

216—15. Oh, my love's like the melody That's sweetly played in tune.

In the main clause the predicate is is like. Like is modified by (unto) melody. Melody is modified by the subordinate clause, That's sweetly played.

219—1. Beautiful and salutary as a religious influence is the sound of a distant Sabbath-bell in the country.

The predicate has a compound attribute beautiful and salutary. As and as are correlatives. Is, the predicate of the subordinate clause, is understood. (Influence is.)

219—2. Young heads are giddy, and young hearts are warm, And make mistakes for manhood to reform.

Heads or they understood is the subject of make. To reform modifies make. Manhood is the object of a preposition understood. For to is the sign of the infinitive. For to reform is the full infinitive.

219-3. That you have wronged me doth appear in this.

That you have wronged is the subject of the main clause.

219—4. I am debtor both to the Greeks and to the Barbarians, both to the wise and to the unwise.

Both—and are correlatives.

219—5. 'Tis midnight's holy hour, and silence now Is brooding like a gentle spirit o'er The still and pulseless world.

Is brooding is the predicate of the second member. Like a gentle spirit (broods) modifies is brooding, like being a conjunctive adverb.

219—6. Human beings are composed not of reason only, but of imagination also, and sentiments, and that is neither wasted nor misapplied which is appropriated to the purpose of giving right direction to sentiments and opening proper springs of feeling in the heart.

Not only—but also are correlatives. That is modified by the clause beginning which is appropriated, etc. Purpose is modified by of giving and (of) opening. To sentiments modifies giving; in the heart modifies opening.

220—7. We recognize books by their bindings, though the true and essential characteristics lie inside.

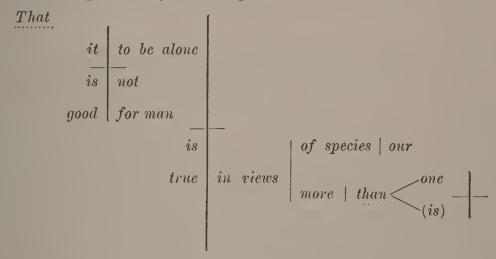
The subordinate clause, though, etc., modifies recognize.

220—8. Order is Heaven's first law, and this confessed,
Some are, and must be, wiser than the rest,
More rich, more wise; but who infers from hence
That such are happier, shocks all common sense.

In the second member, this confessed is independent. The second line is equivalent to Some are (wiser), and (they) must be wiser than the rest (are wise). The clause, than the rest, etc., seems to modify the attribute in each clause. The next two members are equivalent to (some are) more rich, (some are) more wise. Who infers, etc. modifies he understood. From hence modifies infers, hence being used here as a noun. Infers is modified also by the clause, that such are happier, in which such is used as a noun.

220—9. That it is not good for man to be alone is true in more views of our species than one; and society gives strength to our reason as well as polish to our manners.

The first part may be diagramed as follows:



As well as is a complex conjunction.

220—10. And I have loved thee, Ocean!

And is an introductory conjunction. Ocean is independent.

221—2. Ah! who can tell how hard it is to climb

The steep where Fame's proud temples shine afar!

Can tell, the predicate of the main clause, is modified

by the subordinate clause, of which it is the subject, and is hard the predicate. To climb, etc. modifies it. Steep is modified by the subordinate clause, where Fame's, etc., of which temples is the subject. Afar modifies shine.

221—3. Oh that men should put an enemy into their mouths to steal away their brains!

The subject and the predicate of this sentence are understood. The sentence is probably equivalent to *Oh* (it is lamentable), etc., in which all that follows *Oh* modifies *it*, the subject, as an explanatory clause. *To steal* modifies *put*.

221—4. Oh for a world in principle as chaste as this is gross and selfish!

This is equivalent to Oh (I long) for, etc. In principle modifies chaste.

221—5. Oh for that warning voice!

Subject and predicate, probably *I wish*, are both understood.

221-6. What! this a sleeve? 'tis like a demi-cannon.

In the first member the copula is is omitted. What is an interjection. In the second member is like is the predcate, like being modified by (unto) demi-cannon.

221—7. Heigh-ho! sing heigh-ho! unto the green holly; Most friendship is feigning, most loving is folly.

Heigh-ho<sup>1</sup> is an interjection. Thou or you understood is the subject. The second word heigh-ho is a noun, the object of sing.

## GENERAL EXERCISES.

228—1. "You are a tyrant," he answered with a sigh.

He is the subject, and answered is the predicate of the main clause. The direct object of answered is, "You are a tyrant."

228-2. "Stop!" said the driver, in a tone of anger.

This, expanded, is, The driver, in a tone of anger, said, "Do thou stop," the latter clause being the object of said.

228—3. "I do not mean," said the antiquary, "to intrude upon your lordship."

All in quotation-marks is the direct object of said.

228—4. "A bird in the hand," says the old proverb, "is worth two in the bush."

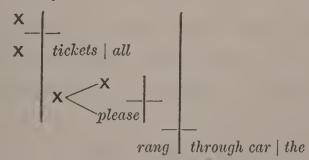
Note.—See page 34 for the diagram of this sentence.

228—5. So great was the demand for paper that the sovereigns of some countries, where the plant out of which it was made flourished, monopolized entirely its culture.

So modifies great. The clause, that the sovereigns, etc., modifies so. Countries is modified by some, and by the clause, where the plant flourished. It was made out of which modifies plant.

229-6. "All tickets, please," rang through the car.

This is equivalent to show all tickets, if you please. The analysis may be indicated as follows:



229-7. I live as I did, I think as I did, I love you as I did.

Each of the clauses as  $I\ did$  modifies the verb preceding the clause.

229—8. Deliver us from the nauseous repetition of as and so, which some so-so writers, if I may call them so, are continually sounding in our ears.

Of as and so is an adjective phrase, modifying repeti-

tion, as and so being here used as nouns. So-so, an adjective, modifies writers. The clause, if I may call them so, modifies are sounding. So in the second line is an adjective pronoun modifying them, being in apposition with that word.

229—9. Pausing a while, thus to herself she mused. Pausing modifies she; thus modifies mused.

229—10. Oh that those lips had language!
After Oh, "I wish" is probably understood.

229—11. There is no man that sinneth not. There is an independent adverb.

229—12. See the blind beggar dance, the cripple sing, The sot a hero, lunatic a king.

(To) dance modifies beggar; (to) sing modifies cripple; (to be) here modifies sot; and (to be) king modifies lunatic.

229—13. From liberty each nobler science sprung, A Bacon brightened, and a Spenser sung.

Brightened is modified by the phrase from liberty, as is also sung.

229-14. The why is plain as way to parish church.

Why, used as a noun, is the subject of the main clause. The second clause is equivalent to as (the) way to parish church (is plain).

229—15. A dainty plant is the ivy green,

That creepeth o'er ruins old,
Of right choice food are his meals, I ween,
In his cell so lone and cold.
The walls must be crumbled, the stones decayed,
To pleasure his dainty whim,
And the mouldering dust that years have made
Is a merry meal for him.

In the second half of this selection crumbled and

decayed are adjectives. To pleasure modifies both crumbled and decayed. That is in the objective after have made.

229—16. Close beside her, faintly moaning,
Fair and young a soldier lay,
Torn with shot and pierced with lances,
Bleeding slow his life away.

Close modifies the phrase beside her. Moaning, torn, pierced, and bleeding away are participles modifying soldier. Slow, an adverb, modifies bleeding away, a complex participle. Beside her modifies lay.

229-17. Down came the tree, nest, eagles, and all.

Tree is modified by (with) nest, (with) eagles, and (with) all.

229—18. His heart went <sup>1</sup> pit-a-pat, But hers went <sup>2</sup> pity Zekle.

Pit-a-pat is an adverb, modifying went. Hers is the subject of the second member. The adverbial modifier of went 2 is (I) pity Zekle.

229-19. Laugh those who can, weep those who may.

The subject of each member is understood. The predicate in each member is let understood. In the first member the probable meaning is (Let) those laugh who can (laugh); (to) laugh, the infinitive, modifying let understood. In the second member the meaning is (Let) those weep who may (weep); the infinitive (to) weep modifying let understood.

229—20. Now they wax and now they dwindle,
Whirling with the whirling spindle;
Twist ye, turn ye! Even so
Mingle human bliss and woe.

They, the subject, is modified by whirling. Now modi-

fies wax. Ye is the subject of the third member, and twist is the predicate. Bliss and woe form the compound subject of the fifth member. So modifies mingle, and even modifies so.

229—21. The piper loud and louder blew,
The daneers quick and quicker flew.

Loud and louder are adverbs modifying blew. Quick and quicker are adverbs modifying flew.

Note.—Sentences 22 and 23 have been disposed of on page 86.

230—24. Hands that the rod of empire might have swayed Close at my elbow stir the lemonade.

Might have swayed is modified by rod of empire. At elbow modifies stir, and close modifies the phrase at elbow.

230—25. Can storied urn or animated bust

Back to its mansion call the fleeting breath?

Can Honor's voice provoke the silent dust,

Or Flattery soothe the dull, cold ear of death?

The subject is compound. Can call is the predicate. Back modifies can call, adverbially. In the second member can provoke is the predicate. In the third member (can) soothe is the predicate.

230—26. Away they went, pell-mell, hurry-skurry, wild buffalo, wild horse, wild huntsman, with clang and elatter and whoop and halloo that made the forest ring.

They is the subject, modified by the nouns in apposition, buffalo, horse, and huntsman. The predicate went is modified by the adverbs pell-mell, hurry-skurry, and by the phrases with clang, (with) clatter, (with) whoop, and (with) halloo. The clause, that made the forest ring, modifies the nouns clang, clatter, whoop, and halloo. In the predicate of the subordinate clause, made (to) ring, the infinitive (to) ring is factitive.

230—27. This is the message that ye heard from the beginning, that we should love one another.

This, the subject, is modified by the explanatory clause, that we should love, etc. Message is modified by the clause, that ye heard from the beginning, in which that is the object of heard. One is in apposition with we.

230—28. Whatever is read differs from what is repeated.

The subordinate clause, Whatever is read, is the subject of the main clause. The object of from is the clause, what is repeated.

230—29. What ho! thou genius of the clime, what ho! What ho! what ho! are interjections.

230—30. Mark what it is his mind aims at in this question, and not what words he expresses.

Mark is the predicate of the main clause in the first member. The object is all that follows, including the word question. In the subordinate clause it is the subject, modified by the explanatory clause, the mind aims at (x) in this question. Is what is the predicate, in which what has a double construction. In the second member the subject you and the predicate mark are both understood. The object is the clause following and. Words modifies expresses. What modifies words.

230—31. In singing, as in piping, you excel.

This means, You excel in singing as (you excel) in piping.

230—32. There brighter suns dispense serener light, And milder moons imparadise the night.

Dispense, the predicate, is modified by the adverb there and by the direct object light. 230—33. The beautiful strikes us as much by its novelty as the deformed itself.

Beautiful is used as a noun. As much as is a complex conjunction introducing the subordinate clause, in which deformed, an adjective, used as a noun, is the subject. Itself is in apposition with the noun deformed. The predicate of the subordinate clause is strikes or does understood.

## SENTENCES

## FROM

## HARVEY'S ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

53-17. None think the great 1 unhappy but the great.2

But  $great^2 = except \ great$ , modifies none. Unhappy is an adjective, referring to great. It is used factitively after think.

53—18. Our birth is but a sleep and a forgetting. But is an adverb, modifying is.

53—19. To make a long story short, the company broke up and returned to the more important concerns of the election.

To make short, etc. is independent, short being a factitive adjective, referring to story. Broke up is a complex verb.

54—21. For nine long years, session after session, we have been lashed round and round this miserable circle of occasional arguments and miserable expedients.

Have been lashed is modified by round and round circle; also by for years; also by (during) session.

54—22. Dim with the mist of years, gray flits the shade of power.

Flits gray is equivalent to is gray, gray being a predicate adjective.

54—23. Can storied urn or animated bust
Back to its mansion call the fleeting breath?

Back is an adverb, modifying call.

54—24. With secret course, which no loud storms annoy, Glides the smooth current of domestic joy.

Course is modified by the clause, which no loud, etc. Current is the subject of the main clause, and glides, the predicate.

54—26. With many a weary step, and many a groan,

- Up the high hill he heaves a huge round stone.

Many a is a complex adjective, modifying the noun following.

62—5. You, yourself, told me so.

Yourself is in apposition with you.

62—10. For we dare not make ourselves of the number, or compare ourselves with some that commend themselves; but they, measuring themselves by themselves, and comparing themselves among themselves, are not wise.

Make is in the infinitive mode, modifying dare, as is also (to) compare. Measuring and comparing are participles, modifying they.

62—11. My country, 'tis of thee,
Sweet land of liberty,
Of thee, I sing.

My country, sweet land of liberty, is independent in construction. It is the subject, modified by the clause (that) I sing. The predicate is is of thee, of which of thee is a phrase attribute.

62—12. Thou great Instructor, lest I stray

Teach thou my erring feet thy way.

Thou great Instructor is independent. (To) feet is the indirect, and way, the direct object of teach. Lest I stray, a subordinate clause, modifies teach.

64-1. The farm is neither his nor theirs.

His and theirs are in the nominative after is. They have the possessive form, but their use determines their case.

64—2. Is that horse of yours lame yet?

Yours is in the objective after the preposition of.

64—3. I did not hear that lecture of yours last evening.

Yours is in the objective after the preposition of. Evening is in the objective after a preposition understood.

64-4. He is an old friend of ours.

Ours is in the objective after the preposition of.

64—5. This book is not mine; it must be his or hers.

Mine is in the nominative after is; his and hers are in the nominative after must be.

64—6. That carriage of theirs is a very fine one.

Theirs is in the objective after of.

64-7. Friend of mine, why so sad?

Mine is in the objective after of.

68—3. They that forsake the law, praise the wicked; but such as keep the law, contend with them.

Such is an adjective pronoun, subject of contend. As is given by some as a relative pronoun after such. It may also indicate an ellipsis (such as those are who keep, etc.).

68—4. There is no class of persons that I dislike so much as those who slander their neighbors.

As is a conjunctive adverb, connecting with the main clause the subordinate, as (I dislike) those, etc. Those is an adjective pronoun, in the objective after dislike understood.

69—6. Whatever is, is right.

Note.—See page 31 for this sentence; also page 99.

69—7. Whatsoever ye ask in my name, that will I do. Whatsoever is in the objective after shall ask.

69-8. He will do what is right.

What has a double construction. It is in the objective after will do, and is subject of is right.

69—9. This is the dog that 1 worried the cat that 2 killed the rat that 3 ate the malt that 4 lay in the house that 5 Jack built.

That is in the nominative to worried. That is in the nominative to killed. That is in the nominative to ate. That is in the nominative to lay. That is in the objective after built.

69-10. A kind boy avoids doing whatever injures others.

Whatever has a double construction; it is in the objective after doing, and in the nominative to injures.

70—6. Whom do you take me to be?

Whom, following to be, is in the same case, the objective, as me preceding.

70—8. What can be more beautiful than that landscape? Landscape is in the nominative to is understood.

70-10. Who told you how to parse "what"?

"What" is here a noun, in the objective after parse.

70—1. Who is in the garden?—My father.

Father is in the nominative to is understood.

70—2. I do not know who is in the garden.

Who is in the garden is the direct object of know. Who, in such cases, is by some grammarians called a responsive pronoun.

70—3. Tell me what I should do.

What is the direct object of should do. What I should do is the direct object of tell.

70—5. Always seek for what you need the most.

What has a double construction; it is in the objective after for and in the objective after need.

71—6. Whose house was burned last night?—Mr. Hubbard's.

Mr. Hubbard's is a complex noun, limiting house understood. The expression is equivalent to Mr. Hubbard's house was burned last night.

71—7. The boy closed the shutters which darkened the room.

Which is in the nominative to darkened. It relates to the whole preceding clause, and may be considered in apposition with the clause.

71—8. What is his name?

What is in the nominative after is (His name is what?).

71—9. Whoever enters here should have a pure heart.

Whoever has a double construction; it is in the nominative to enters, and in the nominative to should have.

71—10. I gave all that I had.

That is in the objective after had.

71—4. One ounce of gold is worth sixteen ounces of silver.

Worth is a predicate adjective after is; ounces is in the objective after a preposition understood.

71—8. Be of the same mind one toward another.

Ye understood is the subject; one is in apposition with ye.

71—9. He sacrificed everything he had in the world: what could we ask more?

What is an adjective, modifying more. More is here used as a noun, in the objective after asked.

71-10. Who's here so base that would be a bondman?

Base is an adjective, modifying who. That is a conjunction, followed by he understood. The clause, that would be, etc., modifies so.

71-11. I speak as to wise men: judge ye what I say.

This sentence is equivalent to *I speak as* (I would speak) to wise men. As is a conjunctive adverb, and to is a preposition. What has a double construction; it is in the objective after judge and after say.

71—12. Liberty was theirs as men<sup>1</sup>: without it they did not esteem themselves men<sup>2</sup>.

Theirs is the predicate nominative after was. As is an introductory conjunction. Men<sup>1</sup> is in apposition with theirs. In the second member men<sup>2</sup> is in the same case as themselves by predication.

71—13. The death of Socrates, peacefully philosophizing with his friends, is the most pleasant that could be desired.

Philosophizing is a participle, modifying Socrates. The clause, that could be desired, modifies the noun death understood.

71—14. O Popular Applause! what heart of man Is proof against thy sweet, seducing charms?

What is an adjective, modifying heart.

71—15. What black, what 2 ceaseless cares besiege our state! What strokes we feel from fancy and from fate!

What in the second line is an adjective, modifying cares. What in the second line is an adjective, modifying strokes, which is a noun in the objective after feel.

71—16. Unveil thy bosom, faithful tomb;

Take this new treasure to thy trust,

And give these sacred relics room

To slumber in the silent dust.

Relics is a noun in the objective after a preposition understood; room is the direct object of give. To slumber modifies room.

71—17. Thy spirit, Independence, let me share,

Lord of the lion heart and eagle eye:

Thy steps I'll follow with my bosom bare;

Nor heed the storm that howls along the sky.

The word *Independence* is independent; it is modified by the word *Lord* in apposition. *Spirit* is the direct object of (to) *share*; (to) *share* modifies *let*.

71—18. The gay will laugh
When thou art gone; the solemn brood of care
Plod on, and each one as before will chase
His favorite phantom: yet all these shall leave
Their mirth and their employment, and shall come
And make their bed with thee.

Brood is in the nominative to (will) plod; on is an adverb modifying plod. As before is equivalent to as (he did chase) before, before being an adverb, modifying did chase; as is a conjunctive adverb. Yet is a conjunction.

81—1. I have heard the bells tolling. Tolling, a participle, modifies bells.

81—2. He saw the letter opened.

Opened is a participle, modifying letter.

81—4. Boys like running, jumping, and skating.

Running, jumping, and skating are participal nouns, in the objective after like.

82—5. The vessel anchored in the bay has lost her sails. Anchored is a participle, modifying vessel.

82-6. Having sold my farm, I shall remove to Iowa.

Having sold is a participle, modifying I.

82—8. Have you not seen strong men weeping? Weeping, a participle, modifies men.

82—9. The general having been captured, the army was defeated.

Having been captured modifies general.

82-10. Your remaining here would ruin us all.

Remaining is a participle used as a noun, in the nominative to would ruin.

82—11. Said 1 but 1 once, said 2 but 2 softly, not marked at all, words revive before me in darkness and solitude.

Said 1, said 2, and marked are participles, modifying words. But 1, an adverb, modifies once; but 2 modifies softly. At all, an adverbial phrase, modifies marked.

82—12. A man hardened in depravity would have been perfectly contented with an acquittal so complete announced in language so gracious.

Hardened, a participle, modifies man. Announced, a participle, modifies acquittal.

82—13. I heard the ripple washing in the reeds,
And the wild water lapping on the crags.

Washing is a participle, modifying ripple. Ripple and water are the direct objects of heard. Lapping is a participle, modifying water.

82—14. Toiling, rejoicing, sorrowing,
Onward through life he goes;
Something attempted, something done,
Has earned a night's repose.

Toiling, rejoicing, sorrowing, are participles, modifying

he. Attempted is a participle, modifying something. The second word something is in apposition with the first, and is modified by the participle done.

87—3. Bring me some flowers.

Me is the indirect and flowers the direct object after bring.

87—12. Blessed are the poor in spirit; for theirs is the kingdom of heaven.

Theirs is a pronoun in the nominative, used as the subject. Blessed is an adjective, modifying poor.

87—16. God help us! what a poor world this would be if this were the true doctrine!

God is the subject of (may) help. What is an adjective, modifying world.

87—19. Could he have kept his spirit to that flight, he had been happy.

Had been is equivalent to would have been; it agrees with he. If understood is the connective. The first clause is subordinate.

87—20. Reign thou in hell, thy kingdom; let me serve, In heaven, God ever blest.

Kingdom is in apposition with hell. God is the direct object of serve. Blest is an adjective, modifying God.

88—21. Place me on Sunium's marble steep,

Where nothing save the waves and I

May hear our mutual murmurs sweep;

There, swan-like, let me sing and die.

The subject of the first member is understood. *Place* is the predicate. *Steep* is modified by the two lines following, in which *nothing* is the subject, and *may hear*, the predicate. *Save* is a preposition. *I* is used for *me* by poetic license. The phrase, *save the waves and I* (me),

modifies the word nothing. (To) sweep modifies murmurs. In the second member the adverbs there and swan-like modify sing and die. (To) sing and (to) die modify let.

112—3. My father brought me some pine-apples when he came from the city.

Me is the indirect, and pine-apples the direct, object of brought.

112-4. She had gone to walk.

To walk, a verb in the infinitive, modifies had gone.

112—7. Hallowed be thy name.

This is equivalent to "May thy name be hallowed;" the verb is in the potential mode.

112—8. Respect the aged.

Aged is here used as a noun.

112-9. I could not learn to do it.

To do, a verb in the infinitive, is used as a noun, in the objective after learn.

113-13. How many regiments were mustered out?

Were mustered out = were discharged, is a complex verb.

113-14. Have all the gifts of healing?

All, an adjective pronoun, is the subject of the sentence.

113—16. The poor must work in their grief.

Poor is a noun, in the nominative.

113—17. We were speedily convinced that his professions were insincere.

The clause, that his professions, etc., modifies convinced.

That is a conjunction.

113—18. Hear, Father, hear our prayer!

Long hath thy goodness our footsteps attended.

Goodness is in the nominative to hath attended. Long is an adverb, modifying hath attended.

113—19. That 1 very law that 2 moulds a tear,

And bids it trickle from its source,

That 3 law preserves the earth a sphere,

And guides the planets in their course.

That is an adjective, modifying law. That is a relative pronoun, in the nominative to moulds. (To) trickle is a verb in the infinitive, modifying bids. That is a pronominal adjective. Sphere is a factitive noun after preserves, and with preserves forms the predicate of the sentence.

113—20. Why restless, why cast down, my soul?

Hope still, and thou shalt sing

The praise of Him who is thy God,

Thy Savior, and thy King.

The first part of this sentence is equivalent to Why (art thou) restless, why (art thou) cast down? Cast down = dejected, is a complex participle, used here as an attribute. Praise is the direct object of shalt sing. God, Savior, and King are all in the nominative after is.

113—21. If parts allure thee, think how Bacon shined, The wisest, brightest, meanest of mankind.

Wisest, brightest, meanest, and of mankind modify man understood, which is in apposition with Bacon.

113—22. If goodness lead him not, yet weariness May toss him to my heart.

Weariness is in the nominative to may toss. Yet is an adverb, modifying may toss. May toss is modified also by the subordinate clause, If goodness, etc. If and yet are correlatives.

120-6. I have read it again and again.

Again and again, a complex adverb, modifies have read.

120—7. He will do so no more.

So and more are adverbs modifying will do; no is an adverb modifying more.

120-8. The mystery will be explained by and by.

By and by, a complex adverb, modifies will be explained.

120-9. Perchance you are the man.

The adverb perchance modifies are.

120—12. He lives just over the hill yonder.

Just is an adverb, modifying the phrase, over the hill; yonder is an adjective, modifying hill.

120—13. Henceforth let no man fear that God will for-sake us.

Henceforth, an adverb, modifies fear. That God will forsake us is the direct object of fear.

120-17. Doubtless, ye are the people.

Doubtless, an adverb, modifies are.

120-18. Perhaps I shall go.

Perhaps, an adverb, modifies shall go.

123—3. We went over the river, through the corn-fields, into the woods yonder.

Yonder, an adjective, modifies woods.

125-4. I am not satisfied as to that affair.

As to is a complex preposition, equivalent to with.

125-5. All came but Mary.

But, a preposition, shows the relation between Mary and all.

125-6. The Rhone flows out from among the Alps.

Out is an adverb, modifying flow. From among, a complex preposition, shows the relation between Alps and flows.

125—10. Night, sable goddess! from her ebon throne, In rayless majesty, now stretches forth Her leaden sceptre o'er a slumbering world.

Note.—See page 67 for this sentence.

130—1. I am a poor man, and argue with you, and convince you.

I is understood before argue.

130—2. He'd sooner die than ask you or any man for a shilling.

This is equivalent to, He would sooner die than (he would) ask you, etc.

131-5. The truth is, that I am tired of ticking.

All that follows is is the attribute of the sentence.

131—6. I remember a mass of things, but nothing distinctly. I remember is understood after but.

131—7. I alone was solitary and idle.

Alone is an adjective, referring to I.

Alone is an adjective, referring to 1.

131—11. The soldier marches on and on, inflicting and suffering, as before.

On and on is a complex adverb, modifying marches. Inflicting and suffering are participles, modifying soldier. As before is equivalent to as (he did) before.

131—13. Not a having and resting, but a growing and becoming, is the true character of perfection as culture conceives it.

Having, resting, growing, and becoming are participles, used as nouns, in the nominative to is; not modifies having and resting adverbially. As is a conjunctive adverb, connecting the clauses.

131-14. Men must be taught as if you taught them not.

As—if is a complex conjunction, connecting the clauses.

131—15. Essex had neither the virtues nor the vices which enable men to retain greatness long.

Neither and nor are correlative conjunctions. Long is an adverb, modifying retain.

131—16. How long didst thou think that his silence was slumber?

Long is an adverb, modifying think; how modifies long. The direct object of think is all that follows that word.

131—17. Vice is a monster of so frightful mien
As to be hated needs but to be seen;
But seen too oft, familiar with her face,
We first endure, then pity, then embrace.

Note.—See page 111 for the discussion of this sentence.

133—5. Let them be desolate for a reward of their shame which say unto me, Aha! aha!

Aha! aha! are interjections, used here as nouns, in the objective after say.

133—6. Oh, that the salvation of Israel were come out of Zion!

This is equivalent to Oh (I wish) that, etc.

133-10. Soft! I did but dream.

Soft is here an interjection. But is an adverb, modifying did dream.

133—11. What! old acquaintance! could not all this flesh Keep in a little life? Poor Jack, farewell! I could have better 1 spared a better 2 man.

What and farewell are interjections; acquaintance and Jack are in the nominative independent. Keep in = retain, is a complex verb. Better is an adverb, modifying spared; better is an adjective, modifying man.

133—2. I send you here a sort of allegory.

You is in the objective after a preposition understood.

133-3. Our island home is far beyond the sea.

Far, an adverb, modifies the phrase beyond the sea.

133—4. Love took up the harp of life, and smote on all the chords with might.

Took up is a complex verb, agreeing with Love.

133-5. Your If is the only peace-maker: much virtue in If.

If is a noun, in the nominative to is. The second clause is equivalent to Much virtue (is) in If, in which If is a noun in the objective after in.

133-6. He is very prodigal of his ohs and ahs.

Ohs and ahs are here used as nouns, in the objective after of.

133—7. He looked upward at the rugged heights that towered above him in the gloom.

Upward, an adverb, modifies looked.

133—8. He possessed that rare union of reason, simplicity, and vehemence which formed the prince of orators.

The subordinate clause, which formed, etc., modifies union.

133-9. Mark well my fall, and that 1 that 2 ruined me.

That is an adjective pronoun, in the objective after mark; that is a relative pronoun, in the nominative to ruined.

134—11. His qualities were so happily blended that the result was a great and perfect whole.

Happily, an adverb, modifies blended; so, an adverb, modifies happily. The subordinate clause, that the result, etc., modifies so.

134-12. There is no joy but calm.

But  $calm = without \ calm$ , modifies joy.

134—13. I must be cruel, only to be kind.

To be kind modifies cruel. Only modifies to be kind. By some authorities it is given as modifying kind.

134—14. Why are we weighed upon with heaviness?

Weighed upon is a complex verb, equivalent to oppressed.

134—15. Now blessings light on him that first invented sleep: it covers a man all over, thoughts and all, like a cloak.

(May) light is a verb, agreeing with blessings. First is an adverb, modifying invented. All over is a complex adverb, modifying covers. The expression is used in the sense of entirely. Thoughts and all modifies man. The expression is equivalent to including thoughts and all. Like is a conjunctive adverb, introducing the clause, a cloak (covers him).

134—16. Many a morning on the moorlands did we hear the

copses ring.

Many a, a complex adjective, modifies morning; morning is in the objective after a preposition understood. (To) ring is a verb in the infinitive, modifying copses.

134—17. He stretched out his right hand at these words, and laid it gently on the boy's head.

Stretched out = extended, is a complex verb. The modifies boy's.

134—18. He acted ever as if his country's welfare, and that alone, was the moving spirit.

As if, a complex conjunction, introduces the subordinate clause. Alone is an adjective, modifying that.

134—19. The great contention of criticism is to find the faults of the moderns and the beauties of the ancients. Whilst an author is yet living we estimate his powers by his worst performance; and when he is dead we estimate them by his best.

To find is an infinitive attribute, having for its direct

objects faults and beauties. The subordinate clause, Whilst an author, etc., modifies estimate. Best modifies performance understood.

134—20. I will work in my own sphere, nor wish it other than it is.

Will is understood before wish, in the second part of the sentence. Other is an adjective, referring to it. Other is modified by the clause, than it is.

134—21. As his authority was undisputed, so it required no jealous precautions, no rigorous severity.

So and as are correlatives. As introduces the subordinate clause.

134—22. Like all men of genius, he delighted to take refuge in poetry.

Like is an adjective, followed by a preposition understood; it relates to he.

134—23. To know how to say what 1 other people only think, is what 2 makes men poets and sages; and to dare to say what 3 others only dare to think, makes men martyrs or reformers, or both.

What has a double construction; it is in the objective after say, and in the objective after think. What also has a double construction; it is in the nominative after is, and is the subject of makes. What also has a double construction; it is in the objective after say, and in the objective after to think. To know is the subject of the first member. How, an adverb, modifies to say. Poets and sages are factitive nouns, after the word makes. To dare is the subject of the second member. The clause, others only dare, etc., modifies what (that). Makes martyrs or reformers or both is the predicate, in which martyrs and reformers are factitive nouns, and both an adjective pronoun used factitively.

134—24. That done, she turned to the old man with a lovely smile upon her face,—such, they said, as they had never seen, and never could forget,—and clung with both her arms about his neck.

That done is independent, done modifying that. Turned and clung form the compound predicate. The parenthetic clause, such, they said, as they had never seen, and never could forget, modifies smile. Of this clause they is the subject, and said, the predicate. There is an ellipsis. The meaning is (It was) such (a smile) as (those are) which, etc. Such and as are correlatives. As is parsed by some grammarians as a relative pronoun when used with such.

134—25. To live in hearts we leave behind Is not to die.

Note.—See page 101 for the discussion of this sentence.

134—26. But war's a game which, were their subjects wise, Kings would not play at.

Which is in the objective after at. If, understood, is the connective; were wise is the predicate of the subordinate clause, wise being a predicate adjective.

134—27. Whoever thinks a faultless piece to see, Thinks what ne'er was, nor is, nor e'er shall be.

Whoever has a double construction. It is in the nominative to thinks in each line. To see is used as a noun in the objective after thinks. Piece is the direct object of to see. What has a double construction. It is in the objective after thinks, and in the nominative to was, is, and shall be.

134—28. The Niobe of nations, there she stands,
Childless and crownless, in her voiceless woe;
An empty urn within her withered hands,
Whose holy dust was scattered long ago.

Niobe is in the nominative case independent by pleo-

nasm. There, an adverb, modifies stands. Childless and crownless are predicate adjectives after stands = is. In her voiceless wee modifies she. Urn is in the nominative to is understood. Ago is an adverb, modifying was scattered, and long is an adverb, modifying ago.

134—29. Can storied urn or animated bust

Back to its mansion call the fleeting breath?

Can Honor's voice provoke the sleeping dust?

Or Flattery soothe the dull, cold ear of death?

Note.—See page 120 for the discussion of this sentence.

135—30. Forth from his dark and lonely hiding-place (Portentous sight!) the owlet Atheism,
Sailing on obscure wings athwart the noon,
Drops his blue-fringed lids, and holds them close,
And hooting at the glorious sun in heaven,
Cries out, "Where is it?"

Portentous sight is independent by exclamation. Atheism is in apposition with the subject owlet. Sailing, a
participle, modifies owlet. Drops and holds are predicate
verbs. Close is an adverb, modifying holds. Hooting is
a participle, modifying he understood. Cries out is a
complex verb, agreeing with he understood. Where is it
(it is where) is the object of cries out (exclaims).

135—31. A thing of beauty is a joy for ever;
Its loveliness increases; it will never
Pass into nothingness.

For ever, an adverb, modifies is.

135—32. Dry clank'd his harness in the icy caves
And barren chasms, and all to left and right
The bare black cliff clang'd round him, as he based
His feet on jets of slippery crags that rang
Sharp-smitten with the dint of armèd heels.

Harness is the subject of the first member. Clank'd is the predicate verb. Dry is an adverb, modifying

clanked. In is understood before barren chasms. All = everywhere, is an adverb, modifying the phrases to left and (to) right. Left and right are nouns in the objective after the preposition to. Sharp-smitten is a participle, modifying that. Cliff is the subject of the second member, and clang'd, the predicate.

A shadow, like an angel with bright hair
Dabbled in blood; and he shriek'd out aloud:

"Clarence is come! false, fleeting, perjur'd Clarence!
That stabbed me in the field by Tewksbury:
Seize on him, Furies, take him to your torments!"

Shadow is the subject of the first member; came wandering is the predicate verb, modified by the adverbs then and by. Like is an adjective, followed by a preposition understood. Dabbled is a participle, modifying hair. Out and aloud are adverbs, modifying shrieked. Clarence is come, etc., is the direct object of shrieked. The second word Clarence is in apposition with the first. By Tewksbury modifies field. Furies is in the nominative independent.

135—34. There are things of which I may not speak:

There are dreams that cannot die:

There are thoughts that make the strong heart weak,

And bring a pallor upon the cheek,

And a mist before the eye.

And the words of that fatal song

Come over me like a chill:

"A boy's will is the wind's will,

And the thoughts of youth are long, long thoughts."

There is an independent adverb in each of the first three lines. In the third line make weak is the predicate, equivalent to weaken, weak being a factitive adjective. The direct objects of bring are pallor and mist. Like is a conjunctive adverb, introducing the subordinate clause, a chill (comes). The last two lines are explanatory of song in the sixth line, and modify song as an adjective element.

A record in the desert—columns strown
On the waste sands, and statues fallen and cleft,
Heap'd like a host in battle overthrown;
Vast ruins, where 1 the mountain's ribs of stone
Were hewn into a city: streets that spread
In the dark earth, where 2 never breath had blown
Of heaven's sweet air, nor foot of man dares tread
The long and perilous ways—the Cities of the Dead.

Columns, statues, ruins, streets, and cities are in apposition with record. Strown, a participle, modifies columns. Fallen, cleft, and heaped are participles modifying statues. Like is a conjunctive adverb, introducing like a host in battle overthrown (is heaped). Overthrown is a participle, modifying host. Where is a relative adverb, relating to ruins. Where is a relative adverb, relating to ruins. Where is a relative adverb, relating to earth. Of heaven's sweet air modifies breath. (To) tread, a verb in the infinitive, modifies dares. Of air modifies breath.

142—13. He will be heard from presently. Will be heard from is a complex verb.

142—15. The doctor will be here immediately. Here is an adverb, modifying will be.

145-7. He deserved punishment rather than pity.

This sentence is equivalent to "He deserved punishment rather than (he deserved) pity."

145—11. Alas for the man who has not learned to work! This is equivalent to Alas, (I am sorry) for the man, etc.

145-13. I had a dream which was not all a dream.

All is an adverb, modifying was; it means wholly.

145—14. A plague of all cowards, still say I.

Plague is the direct object of say.

145—17. When shall it be morn in the grave, to bid the slumberer awake?

The predicate here is shall be morn. To bid, a verb in the infinitive, modifies morn. (To) awake refers to bid.

145—18. The Commons, faithful to their system, remained in a wise and masterly inactivity.

Faithful, an adjective, modifies Commons.

147-2. Level spread the lake before him.

Spread level is equivalent to was level; level is therefore a predicate adjective.

147-4. A soldier of the Legion lay dying in Algiers.

Lay dying is equivalent to was dying.

147-11. The village all declared how much he knew.

All is an adjective, modifying village.

147-13. Is it for thee the lark ascends and sings?

It is the subject, modified by the explanatory clause, (that) the lark ascends and sings.

147-15. He dares not touch a hair of Catiline.

Dares is modified by (to) touch.

147—19. All were sealed with the seal which is never to be broken till the great day.

Is to be broken is the predicate of the clause which is never, etc.

148—20. O God, we are but leaves on thy stream, clouds in thy sky.

But is an adverb, modifying are. Leaves and clouds are attributes.

148—22. It was now the Sabbath-day, and a small congregation of about a hundred souls had met for divine service in a place more magnificent than any temple that human hands had ever built to Deity.

A hundred is a complex adjective, modifying souls. Should hundred be taken as a noun, of must follow. About is an adverb, modifying a hundred. Temple is in the nominative to is understood.

148—23. I know thou art gone where the weary are blest, And the mourner looks up and is glad.

Up is an adverb modifying looks. Art gone is here used for hast gone.

148—24. What matter how the night behaved? What matter how the north wind raved?

The first line is equivalent to What matter (is it) how the night behaved. It is the subject, modified by the explanatory clause, the night behaved how. Is matter is the predicate. What modifies matter. The second line is similar in construction to the first.

148—25. Bird of the broad and sweeping wing,

Thy home is high in heaven,

Where the wide storms their banners fling,

And the tempest-clouds are driven.

Bird, with its modifiers, is independent. Is high is the predicate, high being a predicate adjective. The last two lines modify heaven, where being a relative adverb.

163—1. Black crags behind thee pierce the clear blue sky. The phrase, behind thee, modifies crags.

163—5. The fate of gods may well be thine.

May be thine is the predicate, thine being a predicate nominative.

163—7. His architecture has become a mere framework for the setting of delicate sculpture.

Has become framework is the predicate, framework

being a predicate nominative.

164—4. His home lay low in the valley.

Lay low is equivalent to was low.

164—5. We one day descried some shapeless object floating at a distance.

A preposition is understood before day. Floating, a participle, modifies object.

164—6. The horses ran two miles without stopping.

Miles is in the objective after a preposition understood. Some authors say it is "in the objective without a governing word."

164—8. See what a grace is seated on his brow.

The subject is understood. Grace is the subject of the subordinate clause. What, an adjective, modifies grace.

164-9. There is a very life in our despair.

Life is the subject. There is an independent adverb.

164—11. Heaven first taught letters for some wretch's aid. Some, an adjective, modifies wretch's.

165-1. To doubt the promise of a friend is a sin.

To doubt is the simple subject. Is sin is the predicate.

165—2. He has gone to his office to write a letter.

To write modifies has gone.

165-3. How pleasant it is to see the sun!

The subject is it. To see modifies it, the subject. Is how pleasant is the predicate.

165-4. Not to know me argues yourself unknown.

To know is the subject, modified by not and me. Un-known is a factitive adjective, modifying yourself.

165-5. 'Tis not in mortals to command success.

It is the subject, modified by the explanatory phrase, to command success.

165-6. Music hath charms to soothe the savage breast.

To soothe, a verb in the infinitive, modifies charms.

165—7. I was not hardened enough to venture a quarrel with him then.

Hardened, the attribute, is modified by enough, an adverb. The phrase, to venture, etc., modifies enough.

165—8. A thousand years scarce serve to found a state.

A thousand, an adjective, modifies years. Scarce, an adverb, used for scarcely, modifies serve.

166—1. Soon rested those who fought.

Soon, an adverb, modifies rested. Those is the subject of the main clause.

166—3. He builds a palace of ice where the torrents fall.

The clause, where the torrents fall, modifies builds.

166—4. It was now a matter of curiosity who the old gentleman was.

It, the subject, is modified by the clause beginning with who. Was matter is the predicate of the main clause.

166—5. The fires of the bivouac complete what the fires kindled by the battle have not consumed.

What has a double construction; it is in the objective after complete, and in the objective after have consumed. Kindled modifies fires.

166—6. Towards night the schoolmaster walked over to the cottage where his little friend lay sick.

Over is an adverb, modifying walked. Cottage is modified by the subordinate clause, where his little friend lay sick. Lay sick is equivalent to was sick.

166—7. Until you become lost to all feeling of your true interest and your natural dignity, freedom they can have from none but you.

They is the subject of the sentence. The phrase, from none, modifies can have, and the phrase, but you, modifies none. But is here a preposition. The predicate, can have, is modified by the subordinate clause, Until you become, etc. Lost is an adjective after become.

166—8. The sound of the wind among the leaves was no longer the sound of the wind, but of the sea.

The phrase, among the leaves, modifies wind. Longer modifies was, and no modifies longer. But of the sea is equivalent to but (it was the sound) of the sea.

166—9. These are follies on which it would be greater folly to remark.

To remark on which modifies the subject it, of the subordinate clause.

167—10. I am now at liberty to confess that much which I have heard objected to my late friend's writings was well founded.

To confess modifies liberty. Much is the subject of was founded, and is modified by the subordinate clause, which I have heard objected, etc. Which is the object of have heard. Objected is a participle, referring to which.

167—11. One of his favorite maxims was, that the only way to keep a secret is never to let any one suspect that you have one.

All that follows that in the first line is the attribute of the main clause. Of the subordinate clause, way, the subject, is modified by to keep; the predicate is is to let, of which to let is the attribute. (To) suspect is an infinitive, modifying let.

167—12. How his essays will read, now they are brought together, is a question for the publishers, who have thus ventured to draw out into one piece his "weaved-up follies."

The subject of the main clause is all that precedes is in the second line. Will read, the predicate of the first clause, is modified by the subordinate clause, now (that) they are brought together. Is question is the predicate of the main clause. To draw out modifies ventured.

167—13. Examples may be heaped until they hide

The rules that they were made to render plain.

That is in the objective after to render. To render modifies were made. Plain is a factitive adjective, referring to rules.

167—14. Merciful wind, sing me a hoarse, rough song, For there is other music made to-night That I would fain not hear.

There is an independent adverb. Is made is the predicate in the first subordinate clause. To-night is an adverb, modifying made. The last line modifies music. Fain is an adverb, modifying would hear.

167—15. Woe worth the chase! woe worth the day, That cost thy life, my gallant gray!

This is equivalent to Woe be to the chase! woe be to the day! worth being an old form of the imperative.

167—16. The mountain arose, with its lofty brow,
While its shadow was sleeping in vales below.

With its lofty brow modifies mountain. Below, an adjective, modifies vales.

172—1. God's balance, watched by angels, is hung across the sky.

Watched, a participle, modifies balance.

172—2. My eyes pursued him far away among the honest shoulders of the crowd.

Away, an adverb, modifies pursued; far modifies away.

172—3. Nothing is law that is not reason.

The clause, that is not reason, modifies the word nothing.

172—4. Vice itself lost half its evil by losing all its grossness.

Itself is in apposition with vice. Half is a noun, followed by the preposition of understood. The same is true of all. Some prefer to call these words adjectives.

172—5. There is a limit at which forbearance ceases to be a virtue.

There is an independent adverb. Limit is the subject of the main clause. To be virtue modifies ceases.

172-7. Were I not Alexander, I would be Diogenes.

This is equivalent to I would be Diogenes (if) I were not Alexander.

172-8. Unless he reforms soon, he is a ruined man.

The main clause is, he is a ruined man.

172-9. Except ye repent, ye shall all likewise perish.

All is in apposition with ye, the subject. Likewise modifies perish. Except is used in the sense of unless, and is a conjunction.

172—10. Withdraw thy foot from thy neighbor's house, lest he weary of thee, and so hate thee.

So modifies hate; lest connects the clauses.

172—11. I am quite sure that Mr. Hutchins rode through the village this morning.

Sure is modified by quite and by the subordinate clause following.

173—12. He never has a lesson, because he is too lazy to study.

To study modifies too.

173—14. Even by means of our sorrows we belong to the eternal plan.

Even modifies belong.

173—15. The gentleman who was dressed in brown-onceblack had a sort of medico-theological exterior, which we afterward found to be representative of the inward man.

Brown-once-black is here used as a noun after in. Which is the object of found. To be representative modifies which.

173—16. Every art was practised to make them pleased with their own condition.

To make modifies art.

173—17. The man that blushes is not quite a brute. Quite modifies is.

173—18. My soul is an enchanted boat,
Which, like a sleeping swan, doth float
Upon the silver waves of thy sweet singing.

The subordinate clause, Which doth float, etc., modifies boat. Like is a conjunctive adverb; swan is in the nominative to doth float understood. Singing is a participial noun, in the objective after of.

174-6. I want to be quiet and to be let alone.

To be quiet and to be let alone are direct objects of want.

174—7. The book which I loaned you, and which you lost, was a present from my father.

Which in the first line is the direct object of loaned. Which in the second line is the direct object of lost.

174—8. To live in a fine house and drive fast horses is the height of his ambition.

To live and (to) drive form the compound subject of the sentence; is height is the predicate.

174—9. All the girls were in tears and white muslius, except a select two or three, who were being honored with a private view of the bride and bridesmaids, up stairs.

In the main clause the attribute is in tears. A verb, were dressed, is understood before the phrase, in white muslins, which is adverbial. All following the word muslins is a modifier of girls. The word girls is understood after three. The clause beginning with, who were honored, etc., modifies girls understood. Up stairs is a prepositional phrase, modifying were being honored.

174—10. There was another tap at the door—a smart, potential tap, which seemed to say, "Here I am, and in I'm coming."

Tap in the second line modifies tap, the subject, being in apposition with it. All that follows to say is the object of that verb. Here modifies am; and in, an adverb, modifies coming.

174—11. Not a truth has to art or to science been given,
But brows have ached for it, and souls toiled and
striven.

A modifies truth, and not modifies a. Has been given is the predicate. Have is understood before toiled and before striven.

177-2. He were no lion were not Romans hinds.

Were lion is the predicate of the main clause. If understood connects the clauses.

177—3. I would that ye all spake with tongues.

The object of would is all that follows that word. In the subordinate clause ye is the subject, all being a modifier in apposition with ye. 177—4. Thou shalt love thy neighbor as thyself.

The last part of the sentence is equivalent to as (thou lovest) thyself.

177-6. He made them give up their spoils.

(To) give up is a factitive infinitive, referring to them.

177-7. Go quickly, that you may meet them.

That you may meet them is an adverbial clause, modifying go.

177—9. The French, a mighty people, combined for the regeneration of Europe.

People is in apposition with French.

177—10. Not many generations ago, where you now sit, circled with all that exalts and embellishes civilized life, the rank thistle nodded in the wind, and the wild fox dug his hole unscared.

The subject of the first member is thistle, and of the second, fox. Generations is in the objective after a preposition understood; circled, a participle, modifies you; ago is an adjective, modifying generations. Unscared, an adjective, modifies the noun fox. Nodded and dug are modified by the phrase and the clauses preceding the words, the rank thistle, etc.

177—11. Very few men, properly speaking, live at present: most are preparing to live another time.

Speaking modifies the pronoun I understood, used independently. At is understood before another time.

177—13. While the bridegroom tarried, they all slumbered and slept.

The clause, While the bridegroom, etc., modifies both slumbered and slept.

177—14. Study nature, whose laws and phenomena are deeply interesting.

Nature, the direct object, is modified by the subordinate clause, whose laws, etc.

177—15. Its qualities exist, since they are known, and are known because they exist.

The predicate of the main clause is compound, consisting of exist and are known,<sup>2</sup> each of the verbs being modified by a subordinate clause.

177—16. At ten o'clock, my task being finished, I went down to the river.

My task being finished is independent. At ten o'clock = at ten of the clock.

177—17. Some say, that ever 'gainst that season comes
Wherein our Saviour's birth is celebrated,
This bird of warning singeth all night long:
And then no spirit dares stir abroad;
The nights are wholesome: then no planets strike,
No fairy takes, nor witch hath power to charm,
So hallowed and so gracious is the time.

All that follows say in the first three lines is the direct object of that verb. That as a conjunction introduces the subordinate clause. Ever, an adverb, modifies singeth. 'Gainst is a conjunctive adverb, in the sense of when. The clause, Wherein our Saviour's birth, etc., modifies season. Night is in the objective after a preposition understood, and is modified by all and long. Darcs is modified by the infinitive (to) stir. Power is modified by to charm. So hallowed, etc. is one of the main clauses, in which so and so are modified by the clauses, (that) no planets strike them, no fairy takes, nor witch hath power to charm.

180-7. Thou denied a grave!

This is equivalent to Thou (art) denied a grave!

180-9. How, now, Jenkinson?

This is probably equivalent to How (is it) now, Jenkinson?

180-11. Rather he than I.

This is equivalent to (I would) rather (it were) he than (that it were) I.

180—12. The orphan of St. Louis, he became the adopted child of the Republic.

The orphan of St. Louis is independent by pleonasm. Became child is the predicate.

180—13. Seest thou a man wise in his own conceit? There is more hope of a fool than of him.

After than in the second line, there is hope is understood.

180—16. That building is as large as the capitol. Insert is large after capitol.

180—17. Multitudes of little floating clouds,
Ere we, who saw, of change were conscious, pierced
Through their ethereal texture, had become
Vivid as fire.

Pierced is a participle, modifying clouds. The predicate of the main clause is had become vivid, modified by the subordinate clause as fire (is vivid). The first subordinate clause in its natural order is Ere we, who saw, were conscious of change. Who saw modifies we.

180—18. Then here's to our boyhood, its gold and its gray!

The stars of its winter, the dews of its May!

And when we have done with our life-lasting toys,

Dear Father, take care of thy children, the Boys!

The first part is equivalent to Then here is (a toast) to our boyhood. To is understood before its gold, its gray, stars, and dews, all of which form prepositional phrases modifying is. In the second member, Dear Father is independent; thou understood being the subject. Boys is in apposition with children.

180—19. Wisdom, judgment, prudence, and firmness were his predominant traits.

The subject is compound.

180—20. Rural employments are certainly natural, amusing, and healthy.

The attribute is compound.

180—21. He had a good mind, a sound judgment, and a vivid imagination.

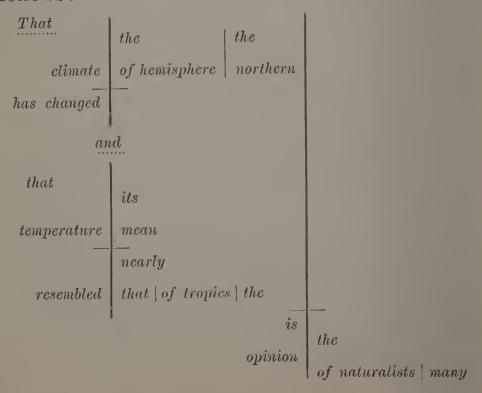
The direct object is compound.

181—28. During our voyage, we whiled away our time in reading, in writing a journal, and in studying navigation.

The phrases, in reading, in writing a journal, and in studying navigation, form a compound adverbial element, modifying whiled.

181—29. That the climate of the northern hemisphere has changed, and that its mean temperature nearly resembled that of the tropics, is the opinion of many naturalists.

The two subordinate clauses form the compound subject of the main clause. The sentence may be diagramed as follows:



181—30. The writings of the sages show that the best empire is self-government, and that subduing our passions is the noblest of conquests.

The two subordinate clauses are direct objects in this sentence.

181—31. The chastity of honor, which felt a stain like a wound, which inspired courage while it mitigated ferocity, which ennobled whatever it touched, and under which vice itself lost half its evil by losing its grossness, is gone.

Like is an adjective. Wound is in the objective after a preposition understood. Whatever is in the objective after ennobled and touched. Itself is in apposition with vice. Chastity is the subject of the main clause, and is gone is the predicate. Under which modifies lost. Half is a noun, the direct object of lost. Evil is in the objective after a preposition understood.

181—32. When public bodies are to be addressed on momentous occasions, when great interests are at stake and strong passions excited, nothing is 1 valuable in speech further than it is 2 connected with high intellectual and moral endowments.

Nothing is the subject of the main clause. In speech modifies nothing. Further modifies valuable, and is modified by the subordinate clause introduced by than. Is 2 is modified by the subordinate clauses, When public bodies, etc., when great interests, etc., and (when) strong passions (are) excited.

184—1. Cæsar having crossed the Rubicon, Pompey prepared for battle.

Cæsar is in the nominative independent, by some called the nominative absolute before a participle.

184—2. Having accumulated a large fortune, he retired from business.

Having accumulated a large fortune modifies he.

184—3. Being but dust, be humble and wise.

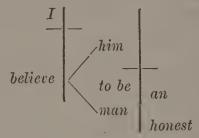
Being but dust modifies the subject thou understood.

184—4. Judging from his dress, I should pronounce him an artisan.

Judging, etc. modifies I. Artisan is in the same case as him. It is a factitive noun, referring to him.

184-5. I believe him to be an honest man.

All that follows believe is the direct object of that verb. It may be indicated in diagram as follows:



Him is used as the assumed subject of the infinitive.

184—6. There is no hope of his recovering his health.

There is an independent adverb. Recovering is a participle, used as a noun in the objective after of.

184-7. There is no prospect of the storm's abating.

There is an independent adverb. Storm's modifies abating. Abating is a participle, used as a noun in the objective.

184—8. Having been detained by this accident, he lost the opportunity of seeing them.

Having been detained modifies he, the subject of the sentence.

184—9. Having annoyed us for a time, they began to form themselves into close columns, six or eight abreast.

Having annoyed modifies they. The word having or containing is understood before the word six, and is modified by the objective six or eight. Placed is understood after eight. Abreast modifies placed understood.

184—10. My story being done,
She gave me for my pains a world of sighs.

My story being done is independent in construction.

187—3. He was a very young boy; quite a little child.

Child is in apposition with boy; quite, an adverb, modifies little.

188-5. "Well, what is it?" said my lady Brook.

Brook modifies lady, the subject. The object of said is Well, what is it? Well is an independent adverb. Of the subordinate clause it is the subject, and is what, the predicate.

188—6. Suddenly the watch gave the alarm of "A sail ahead!"

Alarm is modified by the phrase of "A sail ahead," of which the expression a sail ahead may be regarded as a noun.

- 188—7. He saw a star shoot from heaven, and, glittering in its fall, vanish upon the earth.
- (To) shoot, (to) vanish, and glittering modify the noun star.
- 188—10. This were a wicked pretension, even though the whole family were destroyed.

Were pretension is the predicate of the main clause. Even though is a complex conjunction.

188—11. And behold there came a voice unto him, and said, What dost thou here, Elijah?

Behold is an interjection. There is an independent adverb. The predicate is came and said, the object of said being the clause, What dost thou here, Elijah?

188—12. I passed the house many successive days. A preposition is understood before many.

188—13. He wore an ample cloak of black sheep's wool, which, having faded into a dull brown, had been refreshed by an enormous patch of the original color. His countenance was that of the faded part of his cloak.

Of wool modifies cloak; black modifies sheep, and

sheep's modifies wool. Having faded modifies which.

188—14. The line which bisects the vertical angle of a triangle divides the base into segments proportional to the adjacent sides.

Proportional modifies segments.

188-15. He is so good, he is good for nothing.

The second clause is subordinate, being introduced by that understood, and modifies so.

188—16. The clouds are divided in heaven: over the green hills flies the inconstant sun: red, through the stony vale, comes down the stream of the hills.

Comes red = is red. Red is an attribute after comes = is.

188—17. The accusing angel flew up to Heaven's chancery with the oath, and blushed as he gave it in. And the recording angel, as he wrote it down, dropped a tear on the word, and blotted it out for ever.

Note.—See page 72 for the discussion of this sentence.

188—18. In the awful mystery of human life, it is a consolation sometimes to believe that our mistakes, perhaps even our sins, are permitted to be instruments of our education for im-

mortality.

It is the subject of the main clause. To believe, etc. is an explanatory phrase, modifying the subject. Sometimes modifies is. In the clause, that our mistakes are permitted to be, etc., the predicate is are permitted to be instruments, of which are permitted is the copula, and to be instruments, the infinitive attribute. Perhaps even our sins is equivalent to perhaps even our sins are permitted to be, etc., in which perhaps and even modify are permitted to be.

188—19. Even if his criticism had been uniformly indulgent, the position of the nobles and leading citizens, thus subjected to constant but secret superintendence, would have been too galling to be tolerated.

Even and uniformly modify indulgent. The subordinate clause, if his criticism, etc., modifies would have been galling. Position is the subject of the main clause. Subjected, a participle, modifies nobles and citizens. Thus, an adverb, modifies subjected. But connects constant and secret. To be tolerated modifies too.

188—20. No axe had leveled the giant progeny of the crowded groves, in which the fantastic forms of withered limbs, that had been blasted and riven by lightning, contrasted strangely with the verdant freshness of a younger growth of branches.

In which modifies contrasted.

188—21. The sun was now resting his huge disk upon the edge of the level ocean, and gilding the accumulation of clouds through which he had traveled the livelong day, and which now assembled on all sides, like misfortunes and disasters around a sinking empire and falling monarch.

Was resting and (was) gilding is the compound predicate. Through which modifies had traveled. A preposition is understood before day. Which now assembled, etc., refers to clouds. Like is a conjunctive adverb, introducing the clause, misfortunes and disasters (assemble) etc.

189—22. It is, therefore, a certain and a very curious fact, that the representative, at this time, of any great Whig family, who probably imagines that he is treading in the footsteps of his forefathers, in reality, while adhering to their party names, is acting against almost every one of their party principles.

It is the subject, modified by the explanatory clause following fact. Therefore modifies the copula is. Representative is modified by at this time, of any great Whig family, and the clause, who probably imagines, etc. In

reality modifies is acting. One is modified by every, which is modified by almost. While adhering, equivalent to while (he is) adhering, modifies is acting.

189—23. Rivers will always have one shingly shore to play over, where they may be shallow, and foolish, and childlike; and another steep shore, under which they can pause and purify themselves, and get their strength of waves fully together for due occasion.

Note.—See page 66 for the discussion of this sentence.

189—24. I seem to have been only like a boy playing on the sea-shore, and diverting myself in now and then finding a smoother pebble or a prettier shell than ordinary, whilst the

great ocean of truth lay all undiscovered before me.

The predicate of the main clause is seem to have been like, to have been like being the attribute. Boy is in the objective after a preposition understood. Playing and diverting modify boy. Finding is in the objective after in. Now and then, a complex adverb, modifies finding. Than ordinary is equivalent to than ordinary (pebbles are smooth or shells are pretty). All is an adverb, modifying undiscovered. Lay undiscovered is equivalent to was undiscovered. Before me modifies the copula lay.

189—25. We're nettles, some of us,

And give offense by the act of springing up.

Some is in apposition with we, the subject. Springing

up is a complex participle, used as a noun.

189—26. The twilight deepened round us. Still and black
The great woods climbed the mountain at our back.

Still and black modify woods. At our back modifies mountain.

189—27. May God forgive the child of dust
Who seeks to know where Faith should trust!
The second line modifies child. Where Faith should
trust modifies seeks.

189-29.

Better far

Pursue a frivolous trade by serious means, Than a sublime art frivolously.

This sentence expanded is equivalent to "It is better far to pursue a frivolous trade by serious means, than it is to pursue a sublime art frivolously." It is the subject, modified by the infinitive phrase, to pursue a frivolous trade, etc. The subordinate clause, than it is, etc., modifies better. It is the subject of the subordinate clause, and is modified by to pursue understood.

189-30.

With grave

Aspect he rose, and in his rising seemed A pillar of state; deep on his front engraven, Deliberation sat, and public care; And princely counsel in his face yet shone, Majestic, though in ruin.

The predicates of the first member are rose and seemed pillar, of which pillar is the attribute. Deep modifies engraven. On front also modifies engraven. In the last member shone is the predicate. Yet, an adverb, modifies shone. Majestic modifies face.

190—31. Near yonder copse, where once the garden smiled,
And still where many a garden flower grows wild,
There, where a few torn shrubs the place disclose,
The village preacher's modest mansion rose.
A man he was to all the country dear,
And passing rich with forty pounds a year.

Mansion is the subject of the main clause. Preacher's modifies mansion, and village modifies preacher's. The modifies preacher's. Near modifies rose. (To) copse modifies near. Where once, etc. modifies copse. Copse is modified also by the clause, where many a garden flower, etc. Still modifies grows. Many a modifies flower. In the last member was man is the predicate. Dear and

rich modify man. Dear is modified by the phrase, to all the country. Passing, an adverb, modifies rich. With forty pounds, etc., modifies he.

190—32. As <sup>1</sup> when upon a trancèd summer night
Those green-robed senators of mighty woods,
Tall oaks, branch-charmèd by the earnest stars,
Dream, <sup>1</sup> and so dream <sup>2</sup> all night without a stir,
Save from one gradual solitary gust,
Which comes upon the silence, and dies off,
As <sup>2</sup> if the ebbing air had but one wave:
So came these words and went.

Words in the last line is the subject of the main clause. Came and went is the compound predicate. So modifies came and went. As is a conjunctive adverb. In the first subordinate clause senators is the subject, with oaks in apposition. Branch-charmed modifies oaks. Dream and dream is the compound predicate of this clause. Upon a tranced summer night modifies dream. A preposition is understood before night in the fourth line. Without a stir modifies dream. Save from gust modifies stir, save from being a complex preposition. The subordinate clause, which comes, etc., modifies gust. The predicate of this clause is comes and dies off. Dies is modified by the subordinate clause, As if the cbbing air, etc., in which as if is the connective. But is an adverb, modifying one.

190—33. When Freedom, from her mountain-height,
Unfurled her standard to the air,
She tore the azure robe of night
And set the stars of glory there.
She mingled with its gorgeous dyes
The milky baldric of the skies,
And striped its pure, celestial white
With streakings of the morning light.

She in the third line is the subject, and tore and set the predicate of the main clause. Both verbs are modified by

the first two lines, when being the connective. Unfurled is modified by from height, standard, and to air. In the second member baldric is the direct object of mingled. Mingled and striped is the compound predicate. Striped is modified by the noun white, and by the adverbial phrase, with streakings, etc.

197—1. Soldier, rest! thy warfare o'er.

Being is understood before o'er; warfare is in the nominative independent or absolute.

197-2. "Stop! the hat!" he exclaims.

"Stop! the hat!" is the direct object of exclaims. Stop agrees with a subject understood. "The hat" is probably equivalent to "Get the hat."

197—3. Our fathers, where are they?

Fathers is in the nominative independent by pleonasm. They is the subject of the sentence.

197—4. My being a child was a plea for my admission.

Child is in the nominative independent after the participle being, which is used as the subject.

197-5. The north and the south, thou hast created them.

North and south are in the nominative independent by pleonasm.

197—9. Problem III.—To construct a mean proportional between two given lines.

Problem III. is in the nominative independent by pleonasm.

198—2. The parting words shall pass my lips no more.

More is an adverb, modifying shall pass.

198—4. They have left unstained what there they found.

What has a double construction; it is in the objective after left and in the objective after found. Unstained modifies what.

199-7. Reading makes a full man, conference a ready man, and writing an exact man.

Makes is understood after conference and writing.

199-9. His disciples said, Who, then, can be saved?

The direct object of said is all that follows that word. Then is an independent adverb.

199—10. I was forbidden the premises.

This sentence is not strictly correct. In its correct form, "The premises were forbidden to me," it presents no difficulties. Some authors, however, claim that premises is in the objective after was forbidden.

199-11. They were debarred the privilege of walking in the park.

This is not strictly a correct sentence. A better form is, The privilege was denied, etc. In its present form the preposition from is understood before the privilege. See last remark under 199—10.

199-12. "But what good came of it at last?" Quoth little Peterkin.

"Why, that I cannot tell," said he;

"But 'twas a famous victory."

The first line is the direct object of quoth. But is an introductory conjunction. Last is used here as a noun, in the objective after at. In the second sentence, why is an independent adverb. Said is the predicate of the main clause. The two other clauses are both subordinate. That in the first is the direct object of can tell. But connects the two clauses.

200-1. We cruised about for several hours in the dense fog. About, an adverb, modifies cruised.

200-5. The pile sank down into the opening earth. Down is an adverb, modifying sank.

200-6. The ground lifts like a sea.

Like is a conjunctive adverb. Sea is in the nominative to lifts understood.

200—7. The clouds are driven about in the sky, like squadrons of combatants rushing to the conflict.

Like is a conjunctive adverb. About is an adverb, modifying are driven. Squadrons is the subject of a verb understood. Rushing modifies combatants.

200—8. In vain does the old dragon rage.

In vain, an adverbial phrase, modifies does rage.

200-9. I had supposed till lately that you were my friend.

Lately is here used as a noun after till. Till is a preposition. The subordinate clause is the direct object of supposed.

201—1. The horse ran a mile. 2. I do not care a straw. 3. He is worth a million of dollars. 4. The child is nine years old. 5. He wore his coat cloak-fashion. 6. Spring has already covered thy grave twelve times with flowers. 7. The ship sailed four knots an hour.

In the foregoing sentences mile, straw, million, years, times, and knots are by some authors said to be in the objective without a governing word. Others claim that a preposition is understood before each verb. The author prefers the latter disposition of them. In sentence 5 cloak-fashion is an adverb.

201-8. This is worth remembering.

Remembering is a participle, used as a noun, in the objective after a preposition understood.

201-9. The tower is two hundred and fifty feet high.

Is high is the predicate. Feet is in the objective after the preposition by understood. The complex adjective, two hundred and fifty, modifies feet.

201—10. How many square yards of plastering in a room twenty-one feet long, fifteen feet wide, and ten feet high?

Yards is the subject; are understood is the predicate. Long, wide, and high are adjectives, modifying room; each of these adjectives is modified by the phrase (by) feet.

201—11. The poor, dissipated student was refused his diploma.

The sentence is not correct. In its proper form it presents no difficulties. See last remark under 199—10.

204—3. Many a man shall envy him who henceforth limps.

Many a is a complex adjective, modifying man. Who henceforth limps modifies him.

204—7. Men are like birds that build their nests in trees that hang over rivers.

Like is an adjective, with unto understood after it.

204-8. He was followed by another worthless rogue, who

flung away his modesty instead of his ignorance.

Another and worthless are adjectives, modifying rogue. Away is an adverb, modifying flung. Flinging is understood after instead of. Instead of is a complex preposition, showing the relation between flung and flinging.

204—9. A bird is placed in a bell-glass, A, which stands over the mercury.

A is a noun in apposition with bell-glass. The clause, which stands, etc., modifies bell-glass.

204—10. Remorseless Time!

Fierce spirit of the glass and scythe! What power
Can stay him in his silent course, or melt
His iron heart to pity?

Time is in the nominative independent. Spirit is a noun in apposition with Time. What is an adjective modifying the subject power. Iron is here an adjective, limiting heart.

204—11. "Banished from Rome!" what's banished, but set free

From daily contact of the things I loathe? "Tried and convicted traitor!" Who says this? Who'll prove it, at his peril, on my head?

Note.—See page 57 for the first two lines of this selection.

In the last two lines traitor is independent. Tried and convicted are adjectives, modifying traitor. Who'll prove it = who will prove it.

206—2. If thy hand or thy foot offend thee, cut it off, and east it from thee.

Off is an adverb, modifying cut. If thy hand or thy foot offend thee is a subordinate clause, modifying cut and cast.

206—5. Even a rugged rock or a barren heath, though in itself disagreeable, contributes by contrast to the beauty of the whole.

Even is an adverb, modifying contributes. After though (it is) is understood. In itself modifies disagreeable. Another method of disposing of the sentence is to call even though a complex conjunction, introducing the subordinate clause, (it is) in itself disagreeable.

207—1. His spirit was so bird-like and so pure. Was bird-like and pure is the predicate.

207—2. Dim, cheerless, is the scene my path around.

Is dim (and) cheerless is the predicate. Around is a preposition. In its natural order it precedes my.

207—3. This life of ours is a wild æolian harp of many a joyous strain.

Ours is in the objective after of. Many a, a complex adjective, modifies strain. Is harp is the predicate.

207—6. Still stands the forest primeval.

Primeval is an adjective, modifying forest. Still is an adverb, modifying stands.

207-7. 'Tis impious in a good man to be sad.

It is the subject, modified by the infinitive phrase to be sad, in which sad is an abstract adjective after to be.

207—8. To hope the best is pious, brave, and wise.

Best is a noun in the objective after for understood. The predicate of the sentence is is pious, brave, and wise.

207-9. Time wasted is existence; used, is life.

Time, the subject, is modified by the participle wasted. In the second part of the sentence the subject time is understood. It is modified by the participle used.

207—10. Thoughts shut up, want air
And spoil, like bales unopened to the sun.

Thoughts is modified by the participle shut up. Like is a conjunctive adverb. Bales is in the nominative to a verb understood, and is modified by the adjective unopened.

207—11. Tell me not, in mournful numbers, Life is but an empty dream.

Me is in the objective after to understood. The last line is a subordinate clause, the object of tell. But is an adverb, modifying is.

207—12. Pray for the living, in whose breast
The struggle between right and wrong
Is raging terrible and strong.

Terrible and strong are adjectives, modifying struggle.

208--13. Petulant she spoke, and at herself she laughed;
A rose-bud set with little willful thorns,
And sweet as English air could make her.

Petulant is an adverb, used for petulantly by poetic

license, and modifies spoke. Rose-bud is a noun in apposition with she. Set is a participle, modifying rose-bud. Sweet is an adjective, modifying rose-bud.

208—14. The hills are dearest which our childish feet
Have climbed the earliest, and the streams most
sweet

Are ever those at which our young lips drank—Stoop'd to their waters o'er the grassy bank.

The clause, which our childish, etc., modifies hills. Earliest is an adverb, modifying climbed. The is an adverb, modifying earliest. Most sweet is an adjective, modifying streams. Ever is an adverb, modifying are. Stooped is a participle, modifying lips. Stooped is modified by the phrase, o'er the grassy bank.

208—15. Sometimes her narrow kitchen walls Stretched away into stately halls.

Away is an adverb, modifying the predicate stretched.

209—1. Thus many a sad to-morrow came and went.

To-morrow, a noun, is the subject. Thus, an adverb, modifies came and went. Many a modifies the subject to-morrow.

209-3. I alone was solitary and idle.

Alone, an adjective, modifies I.

209—9. The jury were not unanimous.

Not, an adverb, modifies were.

209-10. Generation after generation passes away.

After generation, a prepositional phrase, modifies generation. Away, an adverb, modifies passes.

209—12. Every age
Bequeaths the next for heritage
No lazy luxury or delight.

Next is here used as a noun, in the objective after to

understood. Luxury and delight are the direct objects of bequeaths.

209—13. There's not a beggar in the street Makes such a sorry sight.

There is an independent adverb. Beggar is the subject of the sentence. Who understood is the subject of the subordinate clause. Such and a are adjectives, modifying sight.

209—14. He that attends to his interior self,

That has a heart, and keeps it—has a mind

That hungers and supplies it, and who seeks
A social, not a dissipated life,

Has business.

He, the subject, is modified by the clauses, that attends, etc., that has a heart, etc., (that) has a mind, etc., and who seeks, etc. Mind is modified by the clause that hungers, etc. That in the first, the second, and the third line is a pronoun. Not in the fourth line modifies seeks understood. Has is the predicate; business is the direct object of has.

209—15. Between Nose and Eyes a strange contest arose:

The spectacles set them unhappily wrong;

The point in dispute was, as all the world knows,

To which the said spectacles ought to belong.

Nose and Eyes is the compound object after between. Set wrong is the predicate in the second line, wrong being a factitive adjective, referring to them. All, an adjective, modifies world. The last line is the attribute in the second member. In the subordinate clause spectacles is the subject, and ought the predicate. Ought is modified by to belong, which is modified by the phrase to which. As is a relative pronoun, object of knows.

210—1. Her beauty, and not her talents, attracts attention. Not, an adverb, modifies attract, understood.

210—3. Out of the same mouth proceed blessing and cursing.

Blessing and cursing is the compound subject. Out of is a complex preposition.

210-4. You and I look alike.

Look alike (are alike) is the predicate, in which alike is a predicate adjective.

210—7. Charles, together with his sister Emma, is studying botany.

Together with is a complex preposition. The phrase introduced by it modifies Charles. Emma is in apposition with sister.

210—8. The crime, not the scaffold, makes the shame.

Not modifies the verb makes, understood after scaffold.

210—12. A coach and six is, in our time, never seen, except as a part of some pageant.

Coach and six may be taken as a complex noun; it is the subject of is seen. Except is a conjunction. As a part = (it is seen) as a part.

210—13. An hour, a day, of virtuous liberty
Is worth a whole eternity of bondage.

Hour and day are the subjects connected by or understood. Is worth is the predicate, worth being a predicate adjective, followed by a preposition understood.

212—1. To give an affront, or to take one tamely, is no mark of a great mind.

To give and to take form the compound subject. Is mark is the predicate.

212—6. Neither poverty nor riches is desirable.

Neither and nor are correlative conjunctions; neither is introductory and nor connects. The analysis may be indicated as follows:

Neither

poverty

nor

riches

is

desirable

212—9. The breezy call of incense-breathing morn,

The swallow twittering from the straw-built shed,

The cock's shrill clarion or the echoing horn,

No more shall rouse them from their lowly bed.

The compound subject is call, swallow, clarion or horn. The predicate is shall rouse. Twittering is a participle, modifying swallow. More is an adverb, modifying shall rouse. No is an adverb, modifying more.

212—10. From the high host
Of stars to the lulled lake, and mountain coast,
All is concentrated in a life intense,
Where not a beam, nor air, nor leaf is lost.

All is the subject, modified by the first two lines. Is concentrated is the predicate. Intense is an adjective modifying life. The last line is a subordinate clause, modifying life. A modifies beam, and not modifies a.

212—11. Time, nor Eternity, hath seen
A repetition of delight
In all its phases; ne'er hath been
For men or angels that which is.

Neither is understood before Time. The phrase, in all its phases, modifies delight. In the last member, that is the subject, and hath been, the predicate. Hath been is modified by ne'er and by the phrase, for men or angels. Which is modifies that.

214—1. To do right, is to do that which is ordered to be done.

To do is the subject. Is to do is the predicate. Right is the object of to do, the subject; that is the object of the attribute to do. In the subordinate clause, is ordered to be done is the predicate, of which is ordered is the copula.

214—3. To do justice and judgment is more acceptable to the Lord than sacrifice.

To do is the subject, modified by justice and judgment. Is acceptable is the predicate. The subordinate clause is than sacrifice (is acceptable).

214—4. It is our duty to try, and our determination to succeed.

It is the subject, modified by the explanatory phrase to try. In the second member it understood is the subject, modified by the explanatory phrase to succeed.

214-5. He had dared to think for himself.

Had dared is the predicate, modified by to think for himself.

214—6. It is the curse of kings to be attended
By slaves that take their humors for a warrant
To break within the bloody house of life,
And on the winking of authority
To understand a law.

It is the subject, modified by to be attended, etc. Slaves is modified by that take, etc. Warrant is modified by to break and to understand. Law is the direct object of break and understand. Is curse is the predicate of the main clause.

214—7. Have ye brave sons? Look in the next fierce brawl To see them die. Have ye fair daughters? Look To see them live, torn from your arms, distained,

Dishonored, and if ye dare call for justice, Be answered by the lash.

To see modifies look. (To) die modifies them. In the third line To see modifies look. (To) live modifies them. Torn, distained, and dishonored are participles, modifying them. Ye understood is the subject of the third member. Be answered is the predicate. The subordinate clause, if ye dare, etc., modifies be answered. (To) call modifies dare.

215-1. I come not here to talk.

Here and to talk modify come adverbially. Not modifies to talk.

215-3. In sooth, deceit maketh no mortal gay.

Maketh gay is the predicate, gay being a factitive adjective, referring to mortal. In sooth modifies the verb maketh.

215—4. I saw along the winter snow a speetral column pour.

Column is the direct object of saw. (To) pour modifies column. Pour is modified by the phrase, along the winter snow.

- 215—5. Let the great world spin for ever down the ringing grooves of change.
- (To) spin modifies let. For ever, an adverb, modifies spins.
- 215—7. It is a brave thing to understand something of what we see.

It, the subject, is modified by to understand, etc. What has a double construction, being in the objective after of and in the objective after sec.

215—8. It is better to fight for the good than to rail at the ill.

It, the subject, is modified by the explanatory phrase,

to fight for the good. In the subordinate clause, it is good is understood; thus, than (it is good) to rail at the ill. To rail, etc. is explanatory of it, the subject understood.

- 215—9. Let us be content in work,

  To do the thing we can, and not presume

  To fret because it's little.
- (To) be content modifies let. Let is modified also by the phrase (to) presume, etc. To do, etc. modifies content. Thing is modified by the clause, (which) we can (do). To fret modifies presume.
  - 215—10. One day with life and heart

    Is more than time enough to find a world.

With life and (with) heart modifies day. Is (time) is the predicate. More modifies time understood. The clause, than time enough (is), etc. modifies more. To find, etc. modifies enough.

215—11. Needful auxiliars are our friends, to give To social man true relish of himself.

Friends is the subject; are auxiliars is the predicate. To give modifies auxiliars. Relish is the object of to give.

215—12. Learn well to know how much need not be known, And what that knowledge which impairs your sense.

To know is the object of learn. Of the first subordinate clause, much is the subject and need or (does) need is the predicate, modified by not and (to) be known. Both the first and the second subordinate clause modify know objectively. Of the second clause, knowledge is the subject, modified by the clause, which impairs, etc. (Is) what is the predicate.

- 215—13. Let him not violate kind nature's laws,
  But own man born to live as well as die.
- (To) violate modifies let. Let is modified also by (to)

own. Own is modified by the expression man (to be) born to live as well as die. Born is modified by to live and to die, connected by the complex conjunction as well as.

215—14. The blood more stirs

To rouse a lion than to start a hare.

Blood is the subject, and stirs is the predicate of the main clause. To rouse, etc. modifies stirs. More also modifies stirs. The subordinate clause modifies more. The analysis may be indicated thus:

215—15. He that lacks time to mourn, lacks time to mend. Eternity mourns that.

He is modified by the subordinate clause following. To mourn modifies time. In the predicate, to mend modifies time.

217—1. All the world was ours once more.

Was ours is the predicate, ours being in the nominative after was. More modifies was, and once modifies more.

217—3. I saw the blue Rhine sweep along.

(To) sweep modifies Rhine; along, an adverb, modifies sweep.

217—4. Death erects his batteries right over against our homes.

Over against homes modifies erects. Over against is a complex preposition. Right is here an adverb, modifying over against homes.

217—6. The complication of a town is often happily unraveled by starting from a main trunk.

Often and happily are adverbs, modifying is unraveled. Starting is a participle, used as a noun in the objective after by.

217—7. Man desires not only to be loved, but to be lovely.

But in this sentence should be followed by also. Not only and but also are here the proper correlatives. Not only modifies desires and (but) also connects to be loved and to be lovely. The sentence may also be construed to mean man desires not only to be loved, but (he desires also) to be lovely.

217—10. We see but dimly through the mists and vapors.

Dimly modifies see; and but, an adverb, modifies dimly.

217—11. Man by man, and foot by foot, did the soldiers proceed over the Alps.

Man by man and foot by foot are equivalent to (with) man by man and (with) foot by foot. The phrases modify proceed. By man and by foot modify followed understood.

217—12. Finally, the war is already begun, and we must either conquer or perish.

Finally is an independent adverb. Already modifies is begun. Either and or are correlative conjunctions.

217—13. He heaped up great riches, but passed his time miserably.

Heaped up, a complex verb, is the predicate of the first member. He is understood before passed.

218—14. Night's candles are burnt out, and jocund Day Stands tiptoe on the misty mountain's top.

Are burnt out, a complex verb, is the predicate of the

first member. Tiptoc is in the objective after on understood. By some tiptoc is regarded as an adverb. Misty, an adjective, modifies mountain.

218—15. I'll look no more,
Lest my brain turn, and the deficient sight
Topple down headlong.

More is an adverb, modifying look; no modifies more. Lest, a subordinate conjunction, introduces the subordinate clauses. Down and headlong are adverbs, modifying topple.

218—16. Not a word to each other; we kept the great pace— Neck by neck, stride by stride, never changing our place.

The first member is equivalent to (We spoke) not a word to each other, in which each is in apposition with the subject we; other is in the objective after to. Not modifies a, and a modifies word. The last line is equivalent to (with) neck by neck, (with) stride by stride, etc. Changing is a participle, modifying the subject we.

218—17. Their breath is agitation, and their life
A storm whereon they ride to sink at last.

In the second member the word is is understood after life, forming with storm the predicate of that member. Storm is modified by the subordinate clause following. Whereon modifies ride.

218—18. Who does the best his circumstance allows,
Does well, acts nobly; angels could no more.
Our outward act indeed admits restraint;
'Tis not in things o'er thought to domineer.
Guard well thy thought; our thoughts are heard in heaven.

The subject of the first member is he understood, modified by the clause, who does, etc. Does is modified

by best, a noun, and best is modified by the clause, (that) his circumstance allows, that being a pronoun in the objective understood after allows. Does and acts is the compound predicate of the main clause. By some, angels could do, etc., is made a subordinate clause, introduced by for understood. More is used as a noun, in the objective after do. In the third line, indeed modifies admits. It is the subject in the fourth line, modified by the explanatory phrase, to domineer o'er thought. Not and in things modify is. For is understood before our thoughts, etc., the clause being subordinate.

220—1. Come as the winds come when navies are stranded.

As is a conjunctive adverb. When also is a conjunctive adverb.

220—2. I never thought that it could be so.

That is a conjunction; so is an adverb.

220-3. He locks the door after the horse is stolen.

After is a conjunctive adverb.

220-4. I now know why you deceived me.

Why is an adverb, modifying deceived.

220-5. He will have friends wherever he may be.

Wherever is a conjunctive adverb.

220-7. However stern he may seem, he is a good man.

However is an adverb, modifying stern.

220-8. While there is life, there is hope.

While is a conjunctive adverb. There and there are independent adverbs.

220—9. Blessed are the merciful: for they shall obtain mercy. For is a subordinate conjunction.

220-10. He rushes to the fray as if he was summoned to a banquet.

As if is a complex subordinate conjunction.

220—11. Whether the planets are inhabited was discussed last evening.

Whether is an introductory conjunction, introducing the clause, the planets are inhabited, which is the subject of the main clause.

220—12. I consent to the constitution, because <sup>1</sup> I expect no better, and because <sup>2</sup> I am not sure it is not the best.

Because is a subordinate conjunction; the same is true of because in the second line. Sure, an adjective, is modified by the clause, (that) it is not the best, that being a subordinate conjunction, and best a noun. Best may also be considered an adjective, modifying a noun understood.

220—13. I do not know where he is.

Where is an adverb, modifying is.

220—14. There was so much noise that I could not sleep.

There is an independent adverb. So is an adverb, modifying the adjective much. That is a subordinate conjunction.

220—15. We meet in joy, though we part in sorrow; We part to-night, but we meet to-morrow.

Though is a subordinate conjunction. But is a co-ordinate conjunction. To-night and to-morrow are adverbs. The first line is a complex sentence; the second, compound.

221-8. Pshaw! there's no distress in that.

Pshaw is an interjection; there is an independent adverb.

221—13. Hark! they whisper: angels say, Sister spirit, come away.

Hark is an interjection. Spirit is a noun in the nominative independent. Away is an adverb, modifying come.

228—1. He has been ill since November.

Since is a preposition, showing the relation between November and has been.

228-2. I will go, provided he sends me.

Provided is a subordinate conjunction.

228—3. Can you not still this noise?

Still is a verb. The predicate is can still.

228—4. The rain still continues.

Still is an adverb, modifying continues.

228-5. The before-mentioned facts are before you.

Before is a preposition; before-mentioned is an adjective.

228-7. This boy is full ten years old.

Old is a predicate adjective; years is a noun, in the objective after a preposition understood. Full is an adverb, modifying ten.

228—8. I never saw<sup>1</sup> a saw<sup>2</sup> saw<sup>3</sup> a saw<sup>4</sup> as that saw<sup>5</sup> saws a saw.<sup>6</sup>

Saw<sup>1</sup> is a verb; saw<sup>2</sup> is a noun; (to) saw<sup>3</sup> is a verb in the infinitive; saw<sup>4</sup> is a noun, the object of saw<sup>3</sup>; saw<sup>5</sup> is a noun in the nominative to saws; and saw<sup>6</sup> is a noun, the direct object of saws.

228—9. What with the bread, and what with the water, he sustained himself for several weeks.

What and what, meaning partly, are adverbs, modifying with bread and with water.

228—10. Give me such as I bargained for, and as much as I bargained for.

This sentence may be taken as equivalent to, Give me such as (that is which) I bargained for and as much as (that is which) I bargained for. Some authorities would call as a relative pronoun after for. The former is the preferable disposition of the sentence.

228-11. What, then, could be done?

Then is an independent adverb.

228-12. He has come round.

Round is an adverb, modifying come.

228—14. The weight of this box is forty pounds.

Pounds is a noun, in the nominative after is.

228—15. The stars are out by two and threes.

Out is an adverb, modifying are; twos and threes are nouns in the objective after by.

228-16. Whether is greater, the gold or the temple.

Whether, an obsolete form of which, is a pronoun. Gold and temple are nouns in apposition with the subject whether.

228—18. No man can come unto me except the Father draws him.

Except, used incorrectly here for unless, is a conjunctive adverb.

229—19. He maketh me to lie down in green pastures.

To lie, a factitive infinitive, modifies me; down is an adverb, modifying to lie.

229—20. They have promised, yet they do not perform.

Yet is a conjunction, in the sense of but.

229-21. One came, methought, and whispered in my ear.

Methought is equivalent to I thought.

229—22. He that catches at more than belongs to him, justly deserves to lose what he has.

More is a noun in the objective after at. Than belongs to him is equivalent to than (that is, which) belongs to him. What is in the objective after lose and has.

229—23. All this I heard as one half dead; but answer had I none to words so true, save tears for my sins.

As is a conjunctive adverb. One is the subject of hears understood. Dead is an adjective, modifying one, and half, an adverb, modifies dead. None, an adjective, modifies answer. True, an adjective, modifies words; so modifies true. Answer is modified also by the phrase, save tears, in which save is a preposition.

229—24. Dreaming, she knew it was a dream.

Dreaming is a participle, modifying she.

229-25. I have told what and how true thou art.

This is equivalent to I have told (thou art) what and thou art how true.

229—26. He thought only of his subject.

Only is an adverb, modifying the phrase of subject.

229-27. The path of glory leads but to the grave.

But is an adverb, modifying to grave.

229—29. Angling is somewhat like poetry: men are apt to be born so.

Like is an adjective; poetry is the object of a preposition understood. So is an adverb, modifying born.

229—30. And the final event to himself has been that, as he rose like a rocket, he fell like the stick.

And is an introductory conjunction. Has been is the copula, and all that follows is the attribute of the main clause. That is a subordinate conjunction. Like and

like are conjunctive adverbs. Rocket is in the nominative to rises understood, and stick is in the nominative to falls understood.

229—31. There shall nothing die of all that is the children's of Israel.

There is an independent adverb. Of all, with what follows, modifies nothing. The possessive sign should be attached to Israel rather than children, the name children of Israel being complex, and used together as the attribute after is.

229—32. We have just come from Brown and Starr's. Brown and Starr's is in the objective after from.

229—33. Three times seven are twenty-one.

This is equivalent to seven (taken by) three times is twenty-one. Seven is the subject. Is twenty-one is the predicate. Taken modifies seven. By times modifies taken.

229—34. I paid thirty-seven and a half cents for butter this morning.

Thirty-seven and a half is a complex adjective, modifying cents.

229-35. Wheat is two dollars a bushel.

Worth is understood after is. Is (worth) is the predicate. Dollars and bushel are each in the objective after a preposition understood.

229—36. He ran the train at the rate of forty miles an hour.

A preposition is understood before the noun hour.

Train is the direct object after ran.

229—37. The more I see of him the better I like him.

More is an adverb, modifying see; the is an adverb,

modifying more. The in the second part of the sentence is an adverb, modifying better. The second clause in such sentences is always the main clause.

229-38. Let your communication be yea, yea, and nay, nay.

(To) be modifies let. Yea, yea, and nay, nay are in the nominative case after the infinitive (to) be, by predication.

229—39. As <sup>1</sup> far <sup>1</sup> as <sup>2</sup> the east is from the west, so far <sup>2</sup> hath He removed our transgressions from us.

So far he hath removed, etc. is the main clause.  $Far^2$  modifies from us. So modifies far. As far as the east etc. is the subordinate clause, modifying  $far^2$ .  $Far^1$  modifies the phrase from west.  $As^1$  modifies  $far^1$ .

229—40. Therefore, if thine enemy hunger, feed him; if he thirst, give him drink: for in so doing thou shalt heap coals of fire on his head.

Therefore is an introductory conjunction. If thine, etc. modifies feed; if he thirst modifies give. Doing is a participle, used as a noun in the objective after in.

229—41. It is good for us to be here.

It, the subject, is modified by the explanatory phrase, to be here. For us modifies good.

229—42. Consider the lilies of the field, how they grow; they toil not, neither do they spin.

How they grow modifies consider.

229—43. A little one shall become a thousand, and a small one a strong nation.

A thousand is predicate nominative after shall become, and nation is in the nominative after shall become understood.

229—44. If I forget thee, O Jerusalem, let my right hand forget her cunning.

(To) forget is in the infinitive, modifying let.

229-45. Hitherto shalt thou come, but no further.

Hitherto, an adverb, modifies shalt come. After but, the elause Thou shalt come is understood. Further, incorrectly used here for farther, is an adverb, modifying shalt come understood; no modifies further.

229—46. Yet man is born unto trouble, as the sparks fly upward.

Yet is an introductory conjunction. As is a conjunctive adverb.

229-47. "Madam," said I, emphatically, "you are in an error."

Madam is in the nominative independent. Emphatically is an adverb, modifying said. In error is a phrase attribute after are.

229—48. How feeble were the attempts at planting towns is evident from the nature of the tenure by which the lands near the Saco were held.

How feeble were the attempts at planting towns is the subject of the main clause. Is evident is the simple predicate. By which modifies were held. Near modifies lands. To is understood before Saco.

229-49. This is—what shall we call it?

The predicate is all that follows this. All that follows is a clause attribute, of which the predicate is shall call what, and it, the direct object.

229-50. It is he,1 even he2.

By some even is taken as a conjunction, the sentence meaning, It is he even (it is) he. Even may also be considered an adverb, modifying is; he<sup>2</sup> being in apposition with  $he^{1}$ .

229-51. He was not even invited to be present.

To be present is an infinitive attribute after was invited. Even is an adverb, modifying invited.

229-52. Is your health good now?—Rather so.

Good is a predicate adjective. Now is an adverb, modifying is. So is a predicate adjective; the full clause being (It is) rather so.

229—53. The garret was filled with broken chairs, cast-off garments, and what not.

What not = other things, may be taken as a noun.

230—54. How long was it before the man came to?—About three-quarters of an hour.

It is the subject. Came to is a complex verb, in the sense of revived. Before is a conjunctive adverb. The clause, before the man came to, modifies it, the subject. The second member is equivalent to (It was) about three-quarters of an hour. Quarters is the attribute in this member, and is modified by three. About, an adverb, modifies three.

230—55. No quips, now, Pistol: indeed, I am in the waist two yards about.

Now is an independent adverb. Quips is the object of give understood. Indeed is an adverb, modifying am. In waist is an attribute phrase after am. Yards is in the objective after a preposition understood. About is an adverb, modifying two.

230—56. He that will not when he may, When he would he shall have nay.

The first line is independent by pleonasm. A principal verb, probably do, is understood after will and may. In the last line nay is in the objective after shall have. Shall have is modified by the subordinate clause, when he would.

230—57. For what is worth in anything
But so much money as 'twill bring.

For is an introductory conjunction. Worth, a noun, is the subject, and is what is the predicate of the main clause. The phrase, in anything, modifies worth. But is a preposition with money as its object. Much modifies money, and so modifies much. As it will bring modifies money. As, in the sense of which, may be regarded as a relative pronoun.

230—58. The swan on still St. Mary's lake Float double, swan and shadow.

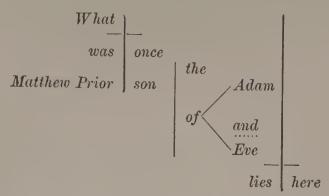
In order to make this sentence clear it must be taken in connection with the lines that precede; thus,

Let beeves and home-bred kine partake
The sweets of Burn-mill meadow;
The swan<sup>1</sup> on still St. Mary's lake
Float double, swan<sup>2</sup> and shadow!

Swan is in the objective after let understood. (To) float modifies let. Double is an adjective attribute after float, the copula. Swan<sup>2</sup> and shadow are in apposition with swan<sup>1</sup>.

230-59. Here lies what once was Matthew Prior:
The son of Adam and Eve:
Can Bourbon or Nassau claim higher?

What is the subject, and was Matthew Prior is the predicate of the subordinate clause, all of which is the subject of the main clause. Lies here is the predicate of the main clause, here modifying lies. Son is in apposition with Matthew Prior. Once modifies was. Higher is an adjective, modifying lineage understood. The analysis may be indicated as follows:



230—60. I cannot tell what you and other men

Think of this life; but for my single self,

I had as¹ lief not be as² live to be

In awe of such a thing as³ I myself.

What is in the objective after tell and after think. But is a co-ordinate conjunction, connecting the two members. Of the second member, I is the subject, modified by the phrase, for my single self. Had be is the predicate. Lief and not are adverbs, modifying be.  $As^1$  is an adverb, modifying lief.  $As^2$  is a conjunctive adverb. I would is understood before live.  $As^3$  introduces the clause, as I myself (am).

230—61. Think for thyself—one good idea,
But known to be thine own,
Is better than a thousand gleaned
From fields by others sown.

Think agrees with a subject understood. Of the next clause idea is the subject. Known, a participle, modifies idea. But is an adverb, modifying known. To be (idea) modifies known, adverbially. Own and thine modify idea understood. Is better is the predicate. Better is modified by the clause following, than being the connective. Of the last clause, a thousand is the subject; the predicate, (are good), is understood. Gleaned is a participle, modifying thousand. Sown is a participle, modifying fields. A thousand may also be taken as a complex adjective, modifying ideas.

230—62. So we were left galloping, Joris and I,

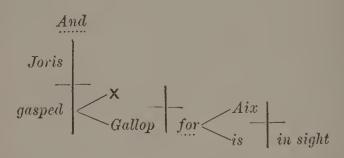
Past Looz and past Tongres, no cloud in the sky:

The broad sun above laughed a pitiless laugh;

'Neath our feet broke the brittle bright stubble like chaff;

Till over by Dalhem a dome-spire sprang white, And "Gallop," gasped Joris, "for Aix is in sight."

Joris and I are in apposition with the subject we. Were left galloping is the predicate of the first member. No cloud (being) in the sky is independent in construction. The last two lines modify were left galloping. White modifies dome-spire. Over by is a complex preposition. The analysis of the last line may be represented as follows:



In line three, above is an adjective, modifying sun. In line four, like is a conjunctive adverb, and chaff is in the nominative to a verb understood.

This well may be
The Day of Judgment which the world awaits;
But, be it so or not, I only know
My present duty and my Lord's command
To occupy till he come. So at the post
Where he hath set me in his providence
I choose for one to meet him face to face,—
No faithless servant frightened from my task,
But ready when the Lord of the harvest calls.

This is the subject of the first member, and may be Day of Judgment is the predicate. Well is an adverb, modifying may be. But connects the two members. Of the

second member, I is the subject of the main clause, and know is the predicate. Only modifies know. The direct objects of know are duty and command. To occupy modifies command. The subordinate clause, be it so or not, is equivalent to be it so or (be it) not (so), and modifies know. Of the second sentence, I is the subject, and choose, the predicate. For one modifies I. Servant is in apposition with I. Frightened is a participle, modifying servant. Ready, an adjective, modifies servant. Ready is modified by the adverbial clause, when the Lord, etc. To meet is the direct object of choose. To meet is modified by the phrase, at the post. Post is modified by the adjective clause, where he hath set, etc. Face to face may be taken as an adverb, or it may be taken as equivalent to "(with) face (placed) to face."

13



## SENTENCES

FROM

## REED & KELLOGG'S

## HIGHER LESSONS IN ENGLISH.

33—2. The old historic Charter Oak was blown down. Charter Oak is the simple subject.

33-4. Bright-eyed daisies peep up everywhere.

Up and everywhere modify peep.

34—8. We both turned rather abruptly.

Both modifies we. Rather modifies abruptly.

34-10. Why will people exaggerate so.

Why and so modify will exaggerate.

34-12. We now travel still more rapidly.

More modifies rapidly, and still modifies more.

34—13. Therefore he spoke excitedly.

Therefore modifies spoke.

34-14. You will undoubtedly be very cordially welcomed.

Undoubtedly, an adverb, modifies will be welcomed; very modifies cordially.

34—15. A furious equinoctial gale has just swept by.

Just is an adverb, modifying has swept by. Has swept by is a complex verb.

34—16. The Hell Gate reef was slowly drilled away.

Hell Gate is an adjective, modifying reef. Slowly and away are adverbs, modifying was drilled.

38—2. The Gulf Stream can be traced along the shores of the United States by the blueness of the water.

Gulf Stream is the simple subject.

38—3. The North Pole has been approached in three principal directions.

North Pole, a complex noun, is the simple subject.

38—4. In 1607, Hudson penetrated within six hundred miles of the North Pole.

The phrase in 1607 modifies penetrated. Penetrated is modified also by the phrase within miles. Six hundred, a complex adjective, modifies miles; miles is modified also by the phrase, of the North Pole.

- 38—6. The Delta of the Mississippi was once at St. Louis. Was is modified by once and the phrase, at St. Louis.
- 38—8. Genius can breathe freely only in the atmosphere of freedom.

Note.—See page 19 for the analysis of this sentence.

38—9. The Suspension Bridge is stretched across the Niagara river just below the Falls.

Suspension Bridge is the simple subject. River is modified by the and Niagara. The phrase, below the Falls, modifies is stretched. Just modifies the phrase below Falls, an adverbial element.

38—10. In Mother Goose the cow jumps clear over the moon.

In Mother Goose modifies cow. Clear modifies the phrase over the moon.

38—12. The first astronomical observatory in Europe was erected at Seville by the Saracens.

Was erected is modified by the phrases at Seville and by the Saracens.

38—13. The tails of some comets stretch to the distance of 100,000,000 miles.

Distance is modified by the phrase of miles. 100,000,000 is an adjective, modifying miles.

38—14. The body of the great Napoleon was carried back from St. Helena to France.

Was carried is modified by back, from St. Helena, and to France.

42—2. In a letter we may advise, exhort, comfort, request, and discuss.

The compound predicate is may advise, exhort, comfort, request, and discuss, all modified by the phrase, in a letter.

43—4. The hero of the Book of Job came from a strange land and of a strange parentage.

Hero, the subject, is modified by the phrase of the Book of Job, of which Book of Job, a complex noun, is the basis. Came is modified by the two phrases, from a strange land and of a strange parentage.

43—5. The optic nerve passes from the brain to the back of the eyeball, and there spreads out.

Of the eyeball modifies back. Spreads is modified by there and out. Passes and spreads is the compound predicate.

43—6. Between the mind of man and the outer world are interposed the nerves of the human body.

Nerves is the subject; are interposed is the predicate. The preposition between has a compound object, mind and world.

43—7. All forms of the lever and all the principal kinds of hinges are found in the body.

The subject is compound, consisting of the two simple subjects, forms and kinds.

43—8. By perfection is meant the full and harmonious development of all the faculties.

Development is the subject of the sentence. The adjective element, full and harmonious, is compound. By perfection modifies is meant.

43-9. Ugh! I look forward with dread to to-morrow.

Ugh is an interjection. Forward is an adverb, modifying look. Look is modified also by the two phrases, with dread and to to-morrow.

43—10. From the Mount of Olives, the Dead Sea, dark and misty and solemn, is seen.

Dead Sea is the subject. The adjective element, dark and misty and solemn, is compound. Mount of Olives is a complex noun, in the objective after from.

43-11. Tush! tush! 'twill not again appear.

Tush and tush are interjections. It is the subject. Not and again modify the predicate will appear.

43—12. A sort of gunpowder was used at an early period in China and in other parts of Asia.

Sort is the subject of the sentence. The phrase, in China and in parts, is compound.

43-13. Some men sin deliberately and presumptuously.

The adverbial modifier is compound.

43—14. Feudalism did not and could not exist before the tenth century.

Exist is understood after not. Before the tenth century modifies both verbs.

43—15. The opinions of the New York press are quoted in

every port and in every capital.

Opinions is the subject of the sentence. New York is an adjective, modifying press. Are quoted, the predicate, is modified by the two phrases, in port and in capital.

47.—1. By the streets of By-and-by one arrives at the house of Never.

Arrives, the predicate, is modified by the phrases by streets and at house. Streets is modified by the phrase of By-and-by. House is modified by the phrase of Never. By-and-by and Never are used here as nouns.

47—2. The winds and waves are always on the side of the ablest navigators.

Winds and waves is the compound subject. Are is the predicate; it is modified by always and by the phrase on the side. Side is modified by the phrase which follows it.

48—3. The axis of the earth sticks out visibly through the centre of each and every town or city.

Sticks, the predicate, is modified by the adverb out; also by the phrase through the centre, etc. Centre is modified by of town or city, a compound phrase, in which town and city are each modified by the compound adjective element each and every.

48—4. The arrogant Spartan with a French-like glorification boasted for ever of little Thermopylæ.

The phrase, with a French-like glorification, modifies boasted.

48—5. The purest act of knowledge is always colored by some feeling of pleasure or pain.

The adverb always modifies is colored. Pleasure and pain is compound after of.

48—6. The thunder of the great London journals reverberates through every clime.

The adjective great modifies journals. Thunder is the subject.

48—7. The cheeks of William the Testy were scorched into a dusky red by two fiery little gray eyes.

William the Testy is a complex noun. Into red modifies were scorched. Dusky modifies red, red being a noun. Eyes is modified by two, fiery, little, and gray.

48—8. The study of natural science goes hand in hand with the culture of the imagination.

Hand in hand may be taken as a complex adverb, or the phrase, expanded, may be regarded as equivalent to "(with) hand (placed) in hand."

48—9. The whole substance of the winds is drenched and bathed and washed and winnowed and sifted through and through by this baptism in the sea.

The predicate is compound. The complex adverb, through and through, modifies all the verbs in the predicate. The phrase, by this baptism, also modifies all of the verbs in the predicate.

48—10. The Arabian Empire stretched from the Atlantic to the Chinese Wall, and from the shores of the Caspian Sea to those of the Indian Ocean.

Arabian Empire is the simple subject. And in the second line seems to divide the phrases into pairs. Chinese Wall, Caspian Sea, and Indian Ocean should be regarded as complex nouns. The words Chinese, Caspian, and Indian are not adjectives, but each forms a part of a complex noun.

48—11. One half of all known materials consists of oxygen. Half is the subject, modified by one.

48—12. The range of thirty pyramids even in the time of Abraham looked down on the plain of Memphis.

Range is the subject. Even modifies the phrase in time. Down modifies looked. Plain is modified by the phrase of Memphis.

- 51—5. We find the first surnames in the tenth century. The phrase, in the tenth century, modifies find.
- 51—6. God tempers the wind to the shorn lamb. The phrase, to the shorn lamb, modifies tempers.
- 51—7. Benjamin Franklin invented the lightning-rod.

  Benjamin Franklin is the subject. Lightning-rod is the object complement or direct object.
- 51—10. Hunger rings the bell, and orders up coals in the shape of bread and butter, beef and bacon, pies and puddings.

Rings and orders is the compound predicate. Up modifies orders. Coals is the direct object of orders; it is modified by the phrase, in the shape. Shape is modified by the compound adjective phrase, of bread and butter, beef and bacon, pies and puddings.

51—11. The history of the Trojan War rests on the authority of Homer, and forms the subject of the noblest poem of antiquity.

Rests and forms is the compound predicate. Subject is the direct object of forms.

51—12. Every stalk, bud, flower, and seed displays a figure, a proportion, a harmony, beyond the reach of art.

The subject is compound, consisting of stalk, bud, flower, and seed. The object is also compound, consisting of figure, proportion, and harmony, all modified by the phrase, beyond the reach, etc.

51—13. The natives of Ceylon build houses of the trunk and thatch roofs with the leaves of the cocoa-nut palm.

Houses is the direct object, or object complement, of build. The compound predicate is build and thatch. The object complement of thatch is roofs. The phrase, of the cocoa-nut palm, modifies trunk and leaves.

51—15. Richelieu exiled the mother, oppressed the wife, degraded the brother, and banished the confessor of the king.

The predicate is compound, consisting of exiled, oppressed, degraded, and banished. The phrase, of the king, modifies mother, wife, brother, and confessor.

52—2. The sea is fascinating and treacherous.

The attribute, fascinating and treacherous, is compound.

52-3. The mountains are grand, tranquil, and lovable.

Grand, tranquil, and lovable form the compound attribute.

52—4. The Saxon words in English are simple, homely, and substantial.

Simple, homely, and substantial form the compound attribute.

53—5. The French and the Latin words in English are elegant, dignified, and artificial.

French and Latin modify words. Elegant, dignified, and artificial form the compound attribute after are.

53—6. The ear is the ever-open gateway of the soul. Gateway, a noun, is the attribute.

53-7. The verb is the life of the sentence.

Life, a noun, is the attribute.

53—8. Good-breeding is surface-Christianity.

The noun surface-Christianity is the attribute.

53—9. A dainty plant is the ivy green.

Note.—See page 92 for this sentence.

53—10. The highest outcome of culture is simplicity.

The noun *simplicity* is the attribute.

53—11. Stillness of person and steadiness of features are signal marks of good-breeding.

Stillness and steadiness form the compound subject; marks is the attribute of the sentence.

53—12. The north wind is full of courage, and puts the stamina of endurance into a man.

Full is the attribute after is. Stamina is the object complement after puts. Into man modifies puts.

53—13. The west wind is hopeful, and has promise and adventure in it.

Hopeful is the attribute after is, and promise and adventure is the compound object complement after has. In it modifies has.

53—14. The east wind is peevishness and mental rheumatism and grumbling, and curls one up in the chimney-corner.

Peevishness, rheumatism, and grumbling form the attribute after is. The object complement of the complex verb curls up is one.

53—15. The south wind is full of longing and unrest and effeminate suggestions of luxurious ease.

Full is the attribute. It is modified by the compound phrase following.

53—2. The sun shines bright and hot at midday.

This is equivalent to is bright and hot; bright and hot are attributes.

53-3. Velvet feels smooth, and looks rich and glossy.

Feels and looks are each equivalent to is, hence the adjectives smooth, rich, and glossy are attributes.

53—4. She grew tall, queenly, and beautiful.

Grew is equivalent to became, hence the three adjectives are attributes.

54—5. Plato and Aristotle are called the two head-springs of all philosophy.

Springs is the attribute after are called, a verb in the passive voice.

54—6. Under the Roman law every son was regarded as a slave.

As is an introductory conjunction. Slave is an attribute after was regarded.

54-7. He came a foe and returned a friend.

Came is equivalent to was; and returned, to became. Foe and friend are attributes.

54—9. This book is presented to you as a token of esteem and gratitude.

As is an introductory conjunction. Token is an attribute after is presented.

54—11. The warrior fell back on the bed a lifeless corpse.

Corpse is an attribute after fell, meaning became. Back modifies fell.

54—12. The apple tastes and smells delicious.

Delicious is the attribute after tastes and smells, each equivalent to is.

54—13. Lord Darnley turned out a dissolute and insolent husband.

Turned out, a complex verb, is equivalent to became.

Husband is the attribute.

54—14. The brightness and freedom of the New Learning seemed incarnate in the young and scholarly Sir Thomas More.

Seemed is equivalent to was. Incarnate is the attribute.

54-15. Sir Philip Sidney lived and died the darling of the court, and the gentleman and idol of the time.

Lived and died are equivalent to was. The attributes are darling, gentleman, and idol.

55—2. Some one has called the eye the window of the soul.

Window is the objective complement, and forms, like the attribute, a part of the predicate. By some grammarians it is called a factitive noun. (See subject of factitives, page 19.)

55—3. Destiny had made Mr. Churchill a schoolmaster. Schoolmaster is the objective complement.

55—4. President Hayes chose the Hon. Wm. M. Evarts Secretary of State.

Secretary of State is the objective complement, and Hon. Wm. M. Evarts, the object complement.

55—5. After a break of sixty years in the ducal line of the English nobility, James I. created the worthless Villiers duke of Buckingham.

Duke of Buckingham is the objective complement, and Villiers, the object complement.

55—6. We should consider time as a sacred trust.

Time is the object complement, and trust is the objective complement. As is an introductory conjunction.

55—7. Ophelia and Polonius thought Hamlet really insane.

Insane is the objective complement. Some authors would call it a factitive adjective. Hamlet is the object complement or direct object.

55—8. The President and the Senate appoint certain men ministers to foreign courts.

Ministers is an objective complement after appoint.

Men is the object complement.

55—9. Shylock would have struck Jessica dead beside him.

Dead is an objective complement or factitive adjective.

Jessica is the object complement.

55—10. Custom renders the feelings blunt and callous.

Note.—See page 21 for this sentence.

55—11. Socrates styled beauty a short-lived tyranny.

Tyranny is the objective, and beauty the object complement.

55—12. Madame de Staël calls beautiful architecture frozen music.

Music is the objective, and architecture the object complement.

55—13. They named the state New York from the duke of York.

New York is the objective, and state the object complement.

55—14. Henry the Great consecrated the Edict of Nantes as the very ark of the constitution.

Henry the Great, a complex noun, is the subject of the sentence. As is an introductory conjunction. Edict of Nantes is the object complement, and ark the objective complement.

58—2. The best features of King James's translation of the Bible are derived from Tyndale's version.

King James's, a noun in the possessive, limits translation. Tyndale's, a noun in the possessive, limits version.

58—3. St. Paul the apostle was beheaded in the reign of Nero.

Apostle is in apposition with St. Paul.

58—5. The tadpole, or polliwog, becomes a frog.

Polliwog is in apposition with tadpole. Or is an introductory conjunction.

58-7. Mahomet, or Mohammed, was born in the year 569, and died in 632.

Mohammed is in apposition with Mahomet. Or is an introductory conjunction. 569 is in apposition with year.

58—8. They scaled Mont Blanc, a daring feat.

Feat is in apposition with the sentence, They scaled Mont Blanc.

58—9. Bees communicate to each other the death of the queen by a rapid interlacing of the antennæ.

Each is in apposition with bees. Other is in the objective after to.

58—10. The lamp of a man's life has three wicks—brain, blood, and breath.

Wicks is the object complement of has. Brain, blood, and breath are in apposition with wicks.

59—11. The turtle's back-bone and breast-bone—its shell and coat of armor—are on the outside of its body.

Back-bone and breast-bone is the compound subject. Shell and coat are in apposition with the subject.

59—12. Cromwell's rule as Protector began in the year 1653, and ended in 1658.

Protector is in apposition with Cromwell's. As is an introductory conjunction. 1653 is in apposition with year.

59—13. In the latter half of the eighteenth century three powerful nations—namely, Russia, Austria, and Prussia—united for the dismemberment of Poland.

Nations is the subject. Russia, Austria, and Prussia are in apposition with nations. Namely is an introductory or independent adverb. United is the predicate.

59—14. John, the beloved disciple, lay on his Master's breast. Disciple is in apposition with John.

59—15. The petals of the daisy, day's-eye, close at night and in rainy weather.

Day's-eye is in apposition with daisy.

62-2. We pay the President of the United States \$50,000 a

year.

President is in the objective after to understood. \$50,000 is the object complement. Year is in the objective after a preposition understood.

62-3. He sent his daughter home that way.

Home is an adverb; way is a noun in the objective after a preposition understood.

62-4. I gave him a dollar a bushel for his wheat, and ten

cents a pound for his sugar.

Him and bushel are each in the objective after a preposition understood; so also is pound. Dollar and cents form the object complement of gave. (For) bushel and (for) pound modify gave.

62—5. Shakespeare was fifty-two years old the very day of his death.

Old is the attribute. Years and day are each in the objective after a preposition understood.

62-6. Serpents cast their skin once a year.

Year is in the objective after a preposition understood.

62—7. The famous Charter Oak of Hartford, Conn., fell Aug. 21, 1856.

Charter Oak, a complex noun, is the subject. Connecticut is in the objective after in understood. Aug. 21 is in the objective after a preposition understood. 1856 is in apposition with year understood.

62—8. Good land should yield its owner seventy-five bushels of corn an acre.

Owner and acre are each in the objective after a preposition understood. (On) acre modifies yield.

- 62—9. On the fatal field of Zutphen, Sept. 22, 1586, his attendants brought the wounded Sir Philip Sidney a cup of cold water.
- Sept. 22, 1586, and Sir Philip Sidney are each in the objective after a preposition understood. 1586 may also be considered in apposition with year understood.
  - 62—10. He magnanimously gave a dying soldier the water. Soldier is in the objective after to understood.
- 62—11. The frog lives several weeks as a fish, and breathes by means of gills.

Weeks is in the objective after a preposition understood. As is an introductory conjunction. Fish is the objective complement after lives.

62—12. Queen Esther asked King Ahasuerus a favor.

King Ahasuerus is in the objective after a preposition understood. Favor is the object complement.

62—13. Aristotle taught Alexander the Great philosophy.

Alexander the Great is in the objective after to understood. Philosophy is the object complement.

62—14. The pure attar of roses is worth twenty or thirty dollars an ounce.

Worth is the attribute. Dollars and ounce are each in the objective after a preposition understood.

62—15. Puff-balls have grown six inches in diameter in a single night.

Inches is in the objective after a preposition understood.

In diameter and in night modify have grown.

65-2. The fat of the body is fuel laid away for use.

Laid, a participle, modifies fuel; away modifies laid.

65—3. The spinal marrow, proceeding from the brain, extends downward through the back-bone.

Proceeding is evidently meant to be construed as a

participle in this sentence. It seems rather to be a participal noun following a preposition understood, the phrase making an adverbial element and modifying extends.

65—4. Van Twiller sat in a huge chair of solid oak, hewn in the celebrated forest of the Hague.

Note.—See page 28 for the analysis of this sentence.

65—5. Lentulus, returning with victorious legions, had amused the populace with the sports of the amphitheatre.

Returning seems to follow a preposition understood, the phrase modifying had amused, adverbially. Some grammarians would call it a participle, but it does not convey an adjective idea.

65—6. The natives came crowding around.

Came crowding is equivalent to were crowding. Around modifies crowding.

65—7. The city lies sleeping.

Lies sleeping is equivalent to is sleeping.

65—8. They stood terrified.

Stood terrified is equivalent to were terrified.

66-9. The philosopher sat buried in thought.

Sat buried is equivalent to was buried.

66-10. The old miser kept grubbing and saving and starving.

Kept is here equivalent to was. The participles grubbing, saving, and starving are attributes.

66—11. He kept me waiting.

Waiting is an objective complement or factitive participle.

66—12. I found my book growing dull.

Growing dull is the objective complement or factitive participle.

66—13. He owned himself defeated.

Defeated is the objective complement.

66—14. No one ever saw fat men heading a riot or herding together in turbulent mobs.

Heading and herding are objective complements. Riot is the direct object of heading. Together, an adverb, modifies herding. Men is the direct object of saw.

66-15. I felt my heart beating faster.

Beating is an adjective complement, modified by the adverb faster. Heart is the object complement of felt beating.

66—16. You may imagine me sitting there.

Sitting is the objective complement. The predicate is may imagine sitting. Me is the object complement.

66—17. Saul, seeking his father's asses, found himself suddenly turned into a king.

The comma after Saul changes seeking, etc. to an adverbial modifier, equivalent to (while he was) seeking, etc.; or it might be construed on seeking, etc., but the clause is preferable. Turned is an objective complement. Himself is the object complement.

67—2. Portions of the brain may be cut off without producing any pain.

Producing is in the objective after without. Cut off is a complex verb = severed.

67—5. You cannot fully sympathize with suffering without having suffered.

Suffering is in the objective after with; having suffered is a participle, used as a noun in the objective after without.

67—7. We should avoid injuring the feelings of others.

Injuring is a participle, used as a noun after avoid.

67—8. My going there will depend upon my father's giving his consent.

Going is a participle, used as a noun in the nominative. Giving is a participle, used as a noun in the objective after upon.

67—9. Good reading aloud is a rare accomplishment.

Reading is the subject of the sentence. Aloud is an adverb, modifying reading.

67-10. The cackling of geese saved Rome.

Cackling, the subject, is a participial noun.

67—11. Such was the exciting campaign, celebrated in many a long-forgotten song.

Exciting modifies campaign. Celebrated, a participle, also modifies campaign.

67—12. All silencing of discussion is an assumption of infallibility.

Silencing is used as the subject.

67—13. He was a squeezing, grasping, hardened old sinner.

Squeezing, grasping, and hardened are participial adjectives, modifying sinner.

68—14. The bridge at Ashtabula giving way, the train fell into the river.

Giving way is a complex participle, modifying bridge. Properly, the participle should read having given way.

68—15. Jesus having turned and spoken to Mary, she recognized him.

Jesus is in the nominative absolute before the participles having turned and (having) spoken, each of which is modified by the phrase to Mary.

68—16. Talking of exercise, you have heard, of course, of Dickens's "constitutionals."

This is probably We talking of exercise, and is independent in construction.

70—2. Richelieu's title to command rested on sublime force of will and decision of character.

To command modifies title.

70—3. Many of the attempts to assassinate William the Silent were defeated.

To assassinate modifies attempts.

70—4. We will strive to please you.

To please modifies will strive, adverbially.

70-5. Ingenious Art steps forth to fashion and refine the race.

To fashion and (to) refine are adverbial modifiers of steps forth. Steps forth may be regarded as a complex verb = advances.

70-6. These harmless delusions tend to make us happy.

To make modifies tend. Happy is an objective complement after to make.

70-7. Wounds made by words are hard to heal.

Made modifies wounds. To heal modifies the adjective hard.

70—8. The representative Yankee, selling his farm, wanders away to seek new lands, to clear new cornfields, to build another shingle palace, and again to sell off and wander.

A preposition, probably after, is understood before selling. (After) selling modifies wanders. To seek, to clear, to build, to sell, and (to) wander also modify wanders. Again modifies to sell and (to) wander.

71—9. These apples are not ripe enough to eat.

Enough modifies ripe, and to eat = to be eaten, modifies enough.

71—11. To bear our fate is to conquer it.

To bear is the subject, and is to conquer the predicate, of the sentence.

71—12. To be entirely just in our estimate of others is impossible.

To be just is the subject.

71—13. The noblest vengeance is to forgive.

Is to forgive is the predicate, to forgive being the attribute.

71—14. He seemed to be innocent.

Seemed to be innocent is the predicate. To be innocent = innocent, being the attribute.

71-15. The blind men's dogs appeared to know him.

Appeared to know is the predicate. To know is the infinitive attribute.

71—16. We should learn to govern ourselves.

To govern is the object complement of should learn.

71—17. Each hill attempts to ape her voice.

To ape is the object complement of attempts.

72-2. Paul was now about to open his mouth.

The attribute is the phrase about to open. Now modifies to open.

72-3. No way remains but to go on.

The phrase but to go modifies way, but being a preposition.

72-5. God never made his works for man to mend.

The phrase for man to mend modifies made. It is

equivalent to for man's mending, which is equivalent to for mending by man. This, in turn, is equivalent to for to be mended by man, and this last phrase is equivalent to the phrase for to mend by man, in which for to is the old form of to used as the sign of the infinitive. The following are similar examples of this use of for to:

What went ye out for to see?

He will not suffer my people for to pass.

The night is too dark for us to travel.

He belonged to a race that was too much detested for him to hope anything from charity.

The sentence 72—5 may be illustrated in diagram as follows:

72—6. For a man to be proud of his learning is the greatest ignorance.

Note.—See page 25 for one form of the diagram of this sentence.

This will probably bear the same construction as the preceding sentence. If so, for to be proud is the subject.

72—7. It is easy to find fault.

Note.—See page 25 for the diagram of this sentence.

72—8. It is not the way to argue down a vice to tell lies about it.

The phrase, to tell lies about it, modifies the subject it. To argue modifies way.

72—9. It is natural to man to indulge in the illusions of hope.

To indulge, etc. modifies the subject it.

72—10. It is not all of life to live.

To live modifies the subject it.

72—11. This task, to teach the young, may become delightful. To teach modifies the subject task.

72-12. He made me wait.

(To) wait is a factitive infinitive or objective complement. Made (to) wait = detained.

73—13. We found the report to be true.

To be true is the objective complement.

73—14. He commanded the bridge to be lowered.

To be lowered is the objective complement.

73—15. I saw the leaves stir.

(To) stir is the objective complement.

73—16. Bishop Jewel pronounced the clerical garb to be a stage dress.

To be dress is the objective complement.

73—1. England's debt, to put it in round numbers, is \$4,000,000,000.

To put, etc. is independent in construction. Is \$ (dollars) is the predicate. (Dollars) is modified by 4,000,000,000.

73—2. Every object has several faces, so to speak.

Note.—See page 24 for the analysis of this sentence.

73—3. To make a long story short, Louis XVI. and Marie Antoinette were executed.

To make a long story short is independent. Short is an objective complement.

74—4. It is a good thing to give thanks unto the Lord. To give thanks, etc. modifies the subject it.

74—5. We require clothing in the summer to protect the body from the heat of the sun.

To protect, etc. modifies require.

74—6. Rip Van Winkle could not account for everything's having changed so.

Having changed is a participle, used as a noun in the objective; it is modified by everything's in the possessive.

74—7. This sentence is not too difficult for me to analyze.

The phrase, for me to analyze, modifies difficult; to analyze modifies too.

74—8. The fog came pouring in at every chink and keyhole.

Came pouring = was pouring. The adverb in modifies pouring.

74—9. Conscience, her first law broken, wounded lies.

Her first law broken is independent in construction.

Wounded lies = is wounded.

74-10. To be, or not to be—that is the question.

Note.—See page 105 for the discussion of this sentence.

74-11. I supposed him to be a gentleman.

To be gentleman is an objective complement.

74—12. Food, keeping the body in health by making it warm and repairing its waste, is a necessity.

A preposition is understood before keeping. The phrase (by) keeping modifies is. In health is an objective complement after keeping. By making and (by) repairing modify keeping. Warm is an objective complement after making.

74—13. I will teach you the trick to prevent your being cheated another time.

To prevent modifies will teach. You is in the objective after a preposition understood. Being cheated is the direct object of to prevent. At is understood before another.

74—14. She threatened to go beyond the sea, to throw herself out of the window, to drown herself.

To go, to throw, and to drown are all object complements of threatened.

74—15. Busied with public affairs, the council would sit for hours smoking and watching the smoke curl from their pipes to the ceiling.

Busied modifies council. Smoking and watching are participal attributes. Smoke is the direct object of watching. (To) curl modifies smoke.

76—1. The loveliest things in life, Tom, are but shadows.

Tom is independent by address. But is an adverb, in the sense of only, modifying are. It may also be regarded as an adjective in the sense of mere.

76—2. There are one-story intellects<sup>1</sup>, two-story intellects<sup>2</sup>, and three-story intellects<sup>3</sup> with skylights.

There is an independent adverb. Intellects <sup>1</sup>, intellects <sup>2</sup>, and intellects <sup>3</sup> is the compound subject. One-story is a compound adjective; so also are two-story and three-story.

76-3. Ah! then and there was hurrying to and fro.

Hurrying is the subject. Then and there, adverbs, modify was. To and fro, a complex adverb, modifies hurrying.

76—4. Hope lost, all is lost.

Hope (being) lost is independent.

76-5. The smith, a mighty man is he.

Smith is in the nominative independent by pleonasm.

76—6. Why, this is not revenge.

76-7. Well, this is the forest of Arden.

Why and well are independent adverbs.

76—8. Now, there is at Jerusalem, by the sheep-market, a pool. Now and there are independent adverbs. See page 40 for the analysis of the sentence.

76—9. To speak plainly, your habits are your worst enemies. To speak plainly is used independently.

76—10. No accident occurring, we shall arrive to-morrow. No accident occurring is independent.

76—11. The teacher being sick, there was no school Friday.

The teacher being sick is independent. There is an independent adverb. Friday is in the objective after on understood.

76—12. Mr. President, I shall enter on no encomium upon Massachusetts.

Mr. President is in the nominative independent by address.

77—13. Properly speaking, there can be no chance in our affairs.

Properly speaking is independent. There is an independent adverb.

77—14. But the enemies of tyranny,—their path leads to the scaffold.

But is an introductory conjunction. The enemics of tyranny is independent in construction.

77—15. She (oh, the artfulness of the woman!) managed the matter extremely well.

Oh is an interjection. The artfulness of the woman is independent by exclamation.

77—16. A day later (Oct. 19, 1812) began the fatal retreat of the Grand Army from Moscow.

Day is in the objective after a preposition understood. Oct. 19, 1812, is in apposition with day. Later modifies the noun day. From Moscow modifies retreat.

79—1. There are no accidents in the providence of God.

There is an independent adverb. The phrase in the providence, etc. modifies are.

79—2. Why does the very murderer, his victim sleeping before him, and his glaring eye taking the measure of the blow, strike wide of the mortal part?

Victim and eye are each in the nominative absolute before a participle. Sleeping modifies victim and taking modifies eye. Wide is an adverb, modifying strike; it is modified by the phrase, of the mortal part. All following murderer and preceding strike is independent in construction.

79—3. Suffer not yourselves to be betrayed with a kiss.

To be betrayed is an objective complement.

79—4. How wonderful is the advent of spring!

How modifies wonderful. Advent is the subject.

79—5. Oh! a dainty plant is the ivy green.

Note.—See page 92 for this sentence.

79—6. Six days shalt thou labor and do all thy work.

Days is in the objective after a preposition understood, with which it modifies shalt labor. The predicate of the sentence is shalt labor and (shalt) do.

79—7. Alexander the Great died at Babylon in the thirty-third year of his age.

Alexander the Great is the simple subject.

79—8. How sickness enlarges the dimensions of a man's self to himself!

Enlarges is the predicate. Dimensions is the object complement. Of self modifies dimensions. To himself modifies enlarges.

79—9. Thou shalt not take the name of the Lord thy God in vain.

God is in apposition with Lord. In vain modifies shalt take.

79-10. Lend me your ears.

Me is the indirect and ears, the direct object.

79-11. What brilliant rings the planet Saturn has!

What is an adjective, modifying rings. Saturn is in apposition with planet.

79—12. What power shall blanch the sullied snow of character?

What is an adjective, modifying power. Snow is the object complement.

79—13. The laws of nature are the thoughts of God. *Thoughts* is the attribute complement.

79—14. How beautiful was the snow, falling all day long, all night long, on the roofs of the living, on the graves of the dead!

Falling modifies snow. Day and night follow prepositions understood. All and long modify day and night. Living and dead are in the objective after of.

79—15. Who, in the darkest days of our Revolution, carried your flag into the very chops of the British Channel, bearded the lion in his den, and woke the echoes of old Albion's hills by the thunders of his cannon and the shouts of his triumph?

The predicate is compound, consisting of carried, bearded, and woke. All these verbs are modified by the phrase in the darkest days, etc. Woke is modified by the compound phrase, by the thunders, etc., thunders and shouts being the basis of the phrase. Echoes is the object complement of woke.

79—1. My having in Sanscrit, like Orlando's beard, is a younger brother's revenue.

Having is here used as a noun. It is the subject of

the sentence. Like is an adjective referring to having. Beard is in the objective after a preposition understood. Is revenue is the predicate.

79—2. Refusing to bare his head to any earthly potentate, Richelieu would permit no eminent author to stand bareheaded in his presence.

Refusing modifies the subject, Richelieu. To bare is the object complement of refusing. To stand is the objective complement after would permit.

80—3. The queen of England is simply a piece of historic heraldry; a flag, floating grandly over a Liberal ministry yesterday, over a Tory ministry to-day.

Queen of England is the subject. Is piece and (is) flag is the predicate; or flag may be taken in apposition with piece. Floating modifies flag.

80—4. The vulgar intellectual palate hankers after the titillation of foaming phrase.

Vulgar and intellectual modify palate.

80—5. Two mighty vortices, Pericles and Alexander the Great, drew into strong eddies about themselves all the glory and the pomp of Greek literature, Greek eloquence, Greek wisdom, Greek art.

Pericles and Alexander the Great are in apposition with vortices, the subject. Glory and pomp are object complements. The compound phrase, of Greek literature, etc., modifies glory and pomp. About themselves modifies drew.

80—6. Reason's whole pleasure, all the joys of sense lie in three words—health, peace and competence.

Pleasure and joys form the compound subject. In words modifies lie. Health, peace, and competence are in apposition with words.

80-7. Extreme admiration puts out the critic's eye.

Puts out, a complex verb, is the predicate.

80—8. The setting of a great hope is like the setting of the sun.

Like is an adjective. Setting is in the objective after a preposition understood.

80—9. Things mean, the Thistle, the Leek, the Broom of the Plantagenets, become noble by association.

Things is the subject. Thistle, Leek, and Broom are in apposition with things. Become noble is the predicate. Mean is an adjective, modifying things.

80—10. Prayer is the key of the morning and the bolt of the night.

Key and bolt is the compound attribute.

80—11. In that calm Syrian afternoon, memory, a pensive Ruth, went gleaning the silent fields of childhood, and found the scattered grain still golden, and the morning sunlight fresh and fair.

Memory is the subject. Ruth is in apposition with memory. Went gleaning and found are the predicates. Went gleaning = was gleaning. Grain is the object complement of found. Golden is an objective complement. Fresh and fair are also objective complements after found. Sunlight is an object complement.

80—1. By means of steam man realizes the fable of Æolus's bag, and carries the two and thirty winds in the boiler of his boat.

Fable is the object complement of realizes. Realizes and carries is the compound predicate. Two and thirty modifies winds.

80—2. The Angel of Life winds our brains up once for all, then closes the case, and gives the key into the hands of the Angel of Resurrection.

Angel of Life is the subject. The compound predicate

is winds up, closes, and gives. Angel of Resurrection is a complex noun. For all is an adverbial modifier of winds.

80—3. I called the new world into existence to redress the balance of the Old.

To redress modifies called. New world is the object complement. Old may be regarded as a noun. It is equivalent to Old World.

80—4. The prominent nose of the New Englander is evidence of the constant linguistic exercise of that organ.

Evidence is an attribute complement.

81-5. Every Latin word has its function as noun or verb or

adverb ticketed upon it.

As is an introductory conjunction; noun, verb, and adverb, are in apposition with function. Ticketed is a participle, modifying function. Some consider ticketed an objective complement.

81—6. The Alps, piled in cold and still sublimity, are an image of despotism.

Piled is a participle, modifying Alps. Are image is the predicate.

81—7. I want my husband to be submissive without looking so.

To be submissive is an objective complement, referring to husband. Without looking so modifies be.

81---8. I love to lose myself in other men's minds.

To lose is the object complement. The phrase, in other, etc., modifies to lose.

80—9. Cheerfulness banishes all anxious care and discontent, soothes and composes the passions, and keeps the soul in a perpetual calm.

The compound predicate is banishes, soothes, composes, and keeps. In a perpetual calm modifies keeps.

81—10. To discover the true nature of comets has hitherto proved beyond the power of science.

To discover is the subject. Hitherto modifies the predicate has proved. Beyond the power of science is an attribute phrase.

81—11. Authors must not, like Chinese soldiers, expect to win victories by turning somersets in the air.

To win is the object complement after expect. By turning, etc. modifies win. Like is a conjunctive adverb. Soldiers is in the nominative to a verb (do) understood. The clause introduced by like modifies must expect.

95—2. The lever which moves the world of mind is the printing press.

Note.—See page 29 for the analysis of this sentence.

95—3. Wine makes the face of him who drinks it to excess blush for his habits.

The clause, who drinks, etc., modifies him. (To) blush is an objective complement after makes. To excess modifies drinks.

96—4. Photography is the art which enables common-place mediocrity to look like genius.

Which enables, etc. modifies art. To look is an objective complement after enables. Like is an adjective, modifying mediocrity. Genius is in the objective after a preposition understood.

96—5. In 1685, Louis XIV. signed the ordinance that revoked the Edict of Nantes.

In 1685 modifies signed. That revoked, etc. modifies ordinance.

96—6. The thirteen colonies were welded together by the measures which Samuel Adams framed.

NOTE.—See page 30 for the analysis of this sentence.

96—7. The guilt of the slave-trade, which sprang out of the traffic with Guinea, rests with John Hawkins.

Which sprang, etc. modifies slave-trade.

96—8. I found the place to which you referred.

You referred to which modifies place.

96—9. The spirit in which we act is the highest matter.

In which modifies act; the subordinate clause modifies spirit. Is matter is the predicate of the main clause.

96—10. It was the same book that I referred to.

That is in the objective after to. The clause, that I referred to, modifies book.

96—11. She that I spoke to was blind.

That I spoke to modifies she. To that modifies spoke.

96—12. Grouchy did not arrive at the time that Napoleon most needed him.

: (In) that Napoleon most needed him modifies time. In is understood before that = which. The phrase (in) that modifies needed.

96—13. Attention is the stuff that memory is made of.

That memory is made of modifies stuff. Of that modifies made.

96—14. It is to you that I speak.

That I speak to modifies it. To that modifies speak.

96—15. It was from me that he received the information.

It, the subject, is modified by the explanatory clause, he received the information from that. When from takes its natural position I must be substituted for me.

96—16. Islands are the tops of mountains whose base is in the bed of the ocean.

Whose base, etc. modifies mountains. In bed modifies is.

96-17. Unhappy is the man whose mother does not make all mothers interesting.

Whose mother, etc. modifies man. Is unhappy is the predicate of the main clause. Interesting is a factitive or objective complement, after make.

97—1. Trillions of waves of ether enter the eye and hit the retina in the time you take to breathe.

Trillions is the subject; enter and hit is the compound predicate. Both verbs are modified by the phrase in time. Time is modified by the clause, (that) you take to breathe. To breathe modifies take, adverbially.

97—2. The *smith* takes his name from his *smoothing* the metals he works on.

Smoothing is a participle used as a noun, in the objective after from. Metals is in the objective after smoothing, used as a participle. Which is understood after on (on which he works).

97—3. Socrates was one of the greatest sages the world ever saw.

Was one is the predicate. One is modified by of sages. The clause, (that) the world ever saw, modifies sages.

97—4. Whom the Lord loveth he chasteneth.

He chasteneth is the main clause; chasteneth is modified by the clause, the Lord loveth whom.

97—5. He did what was right.

Note.—See page 31 for this sentence.

97—6. What is false in this world below betrays itself in a love of show.

The subject of betrays, the predicate of the main clause, is that (a part of what, which is the subject of both betrays and is). The subordinate clause, what is false in this world, modifies the subject of the main clause. Below is an adjective, modifying world.

97—7. The swan achieved what the goose conceived.

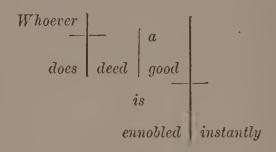
What has a double construction; it is in the objective after both achieved and conceived.

97-8. What men he had were true.

What is used both as an adjective to limit men and as a pronoun in the objective after had. It is equivalent to those which.

98—9. Whoever does a good deed is instantly ennobled.

Whoever is subject of the subordinate clause. This whole clause is subject of is ennobled. The following diagram illustrates the analysis:



98-10. I told him to bring whichever was the lightest.

Him is in the objective after a preposition understood. To bring is the object complement of told. Whichever was the lightest is the object complement of bring.

98—11. Whatever crushes individuality is despotism.

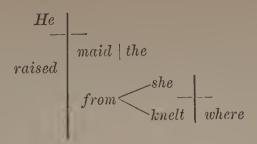
Whatever crushes individuality is the subject of the main clause.

98—12. A dépôt is a place where stores are deposited.

Place is an attribute. It is modified by the clause, stores are deposited where.

98-13. He raised the maid from where she knelt.

The object of from is the clause, where she knelt. The diagram may be as follows:



98—14. Youth is the time when the seeds of character are sown.

Time is modified by the clause that follows. When modifies sown.

98—15. Shylock would give the duke no reason why he followed a losing suit against Antonio.

Duke is the object of a preposition understood. Reason is modified by the clause, why he followed, etc. Why modifies followed.

98—16. Mark the majestic simplicity of those laws whereby the operations of the universe are conducted.

Laws is modified by the clause that follows. Whereby modifies are conducted.

101—2. While Louis XIV. reigned, Europe was at war.

The clause, while Louis XIV. reigned, modifies was.

101—3. When my father and my mother forsake me, then the Lord will take me up.

The second is the main clause. Then, an adverb, modifies will take. Then is modified by the subordinate clause, When my father and my mother forsake me.

101—4. Cato, before he durst give himself the fatal stroke, spent the night in reading "Plato's Immortality."

In reading modifies spent. Plato's Immortality is the object complement of reading. Spent is modified also by the clause, before he durst, etc. (To) give modifies durst. Himself is the object of a preposition understood.

101—5. Many a year is in its grave since I crossed this restless wave.

Many a, a complex adjective, modifies year. The subordinate clause, since I crossed, etc., modifies is.

101-6. Where the snow falls, there is freedom.

The main clause is Freedom is there. There is modified by the subordinate clause, Where the snow falls.

101—7. Pope skimmed the cream of good sense and expression wherever he could find it.

The subordinate clause, wherever, etc., modifies skimmed. Wherever is a conjunctive adverb. Good modifies both sense and expression.

102—8. The wind bloweth where it listeth.

Where it listeth modifies bloweth.

102-9. Washington was as 1 good as 2 he was great.

 $As^1$  is an adverb, modifying good;  $as^2$  is a conjunctive adverb, introducing the clause, as he was great, which modifies  $as^1$ .

102-10. The wiser he grew, the humbler he became.

The, an adverb, modifies humbler in the main clause. In the subordinate clause the adverb the modifies wiser.

102-12. To be right is better than to be President.

To be right is the subject, right being an abstract adjective after to be. The clause, than to be President (would be good) modifies better.

102-13. It was so cold that the mercury froze.

So modifies cold, and is modified by the clause, that the mercury froze, that being a subordinate conjunction.

102—14. It was so cold as to freeze the mercury.

So modifies cold, and is modified by the clause as to freeze the mercury (would require).

102—15. Dying for a principle is a higher degree of virtue than scolding for it.

Dying is the subject of the main clause. Is degree is the predicate. Higher is modified by the clause, than scolding for it (is high).

102—16. He called so loud that all the hollow deep of hell resounded.

Loud is an adverb, modifying called. So modifies loud. The clause, that all the hollow deep, etc., modifies so.

102-17. To preach is easier than to practise.

Of the subordinate clause to practise is the subject, and is easy understood is the predicate.

102—18. One's breeding shows itself nowhere more than in

his religion.

More modifies shows, and is modified by the clause, than (it shows itself) in his religion. More and than are correlatives.

103-1. He died as he lived.

As he lived modifies died.

103-3. As the upright man thinks, so he speaks.

The first clause modifies so in the second, as being the connective.

103-4. As is the boy, so will be the man.

As is the boy, the subordinate clause, modifies so. So is the correlative of as, and modifies will be.

103—5. The waves of conversation roll and shape our thoughts as the surf rolls and shapes the pebbles on the shore.

The clause introduced by as modifies roll and shape.

103-7. Slang is always vulgar, as it is an affected way of talking.

The clause, as it is, etc., modifies is.

104—8. We should keep the pores of the skin open, for through them the blood throws off its impurities.

The predicate of the main clause is should keep open, of which open is a factitive or objective complement. The subordinate clause introduced by for modifies should keep open.

104—9. Since the breath contains poisonous carbonic acid, our sleeping rooms should be well ventilated.

The clause, since the breath, etc., modifies should be ventilated.

104—10. Sea-bathing is the most healthful kind of washing, as it combines fresh air and vigorous exercise with its other benefits.

The clause, as it combines, etc., modifies is in the main clause.

104—11. Wheat is the most valuable of grains, because bread is made from its flour.

The clause introduced by because modifies is.

104—12. God was angry with the children of Israel, for he overthrew them in the wilderness.

The clause, for he overthrew, etc., modifies was.

104—13. Tobacco and the potato are American products, since Raleigh found them here.

The clause introduced by since modifies are.

104—14. It rained last night, because the ground is wet this morning.

The clause, because the ground is wet, etc., modifies rained.

104—15. We Americans are all cuckoos, for we build our homes in the nests of other birds.

The clause, for we build, etc., modifies are. Americans and all are in apposition with we, the subject.

105—1. If the air is quickly compressed, enough heat is evolved to produce combustion.

To produce modifies enough, and enough modifies heat. The clause, If the air, etc., modifies is evolved.

105—2. Unless your thought packs easily and neatly in verse, always use prose.

The subject of the main clause is understood. Use is the predicate. The clause, unless your thoughts, etc., modifies use.

105—3. If you ever saw a crow with a king-bird after him, you have an image of a dull speaker and a lively listener.

The clause, if you ever saw, etc., modifies have in the main clause. With a king-bird modifies crow. After him modifies flying understood.

105—4. Were it not for the warm waters of the Gulf Stream, the harbors and the rivers of Britain would be blocked up with ice for a great part of the year.

Where the verb precedes the subject it, the introductory conjunction if may be omitted. The subordinate clause, Were it not, etc., modifies the complex verb, would be blocked up.

105—5. Should the calls of hunger be neglected, the fat of the body is thrown into the grate to keep the furnace in play.

Should the calls, etc. modifies is thrown, in the main clause. To keep also modifies is thrown.

105—6. Language was given us that we might say pleasant things to each other.

The clause introduced by that modifies was given. Each is in apposition with we.

105—7. Spiders have eyes all over their heads, in order that they may see in many directions at one time.

All, an adverb, modifies the phrase, over heads. The clause introduced by in order that modifies have.

105—8. The ship-canal across the Isthmus of Suez was dug so that European vessels need not sail around the Cape of Good Hope to reach the Orient.

The clause introduced by so that modifies was dug. Need sail is the predicate of the subordinate clause. To reach the Orient modifies sail.

105—9. The air draws up vapors from the sea and the land, and retains them dissolved in itself or suspended in cisterns of clouds, that it may drop them as rain or dew upon the thirsty earth.

Up, an adverb, modifies draws. Land is in the objective after a preposition understood. Dissolved and suspended are objective complements, being factitive participles referring to them. As is an introductory conjunction, introducing the appositive elements rain and dew. The clause introduced by that modifies draws and retains.

105—10. Although the brain is only one-fortieth of the body, about one-sixth of the blood is sent to it.

In the principal clause, about modifies the subject one-fourth. The clause, Although the brain, etc., modifies is sent. Only modifies one-fortieth.

106—11. Though the atmosphere presses on us with a load of fifteen pounds on every square inch of surface, still we do not feel its weight.

In the principal clause, still modifies do feel, the predicate. The subordinate clause, though the atmosphere, etc., modifies do feel. On every square inch, etc. modifies presses.

106—12. Though thou shouldst bray a fool in a mortar, yet will not his foolishness depart from him.

The clause, though thou shouldst bray, etc., modifies will depart, in the principal clause. Yet modifies will depart. Though and yet are correlatives.

106—13. If the War of Roses did not utterly destroy English freedom, it arrested its progress for a hundred years.

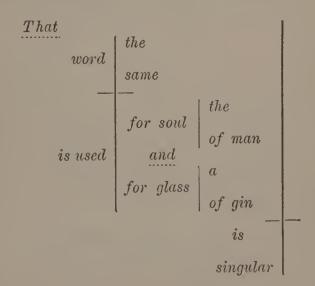
In the principal clause, a hundred modifies years as a complex adjective. The clause introduced by if modifies arrested. War of Roses is the subject of the subordinate clause.

106—14. Though many rivers flow into the Mediterranean, they are not sufficient to make up for the loss caused by evaporation.

Are sufficient is the predicate of the main clause. To make up, a complex verb, modifies sufficient. Caused, etc. modifies loss. The subordinate clause, though many rivers, etc., modifies are.

111—2. That the same word is used for the soul of man and for a glass of gin is singular.

That is an introductory conjunction. The whole clause, including the word gin, is the subject of the sentence. The analysis may be represented as follows:



111—3. "What have I done?" is asked by the knave and the thief.

The clause, What have I done, is subject of the sentence. By is understood before thief.

111—4. Who was the discoverer of America is not yet fully determined by historians.

The subject of the sentence is the clause, Who was the discoverer of America.

111—5. When letters were first used is not certainly known. The subject clause is, When letters were first used.

111—6. "Where is Abel, thy brother?" smote the ears of the guilty Cain.

Note.—See page 34 for the analysis of this sentence.

111—7. When to quit business and enjoy their wealth is a problem never solved by some.

The subject clause is, When to quit business and enjoy their wealth. Solved is a participle, modifying problem.

111—9. The Esquimau feels intuitively that bear's grease and blubber are the dishes for his table.

The object complement is the clause, that bear's grease and blubber are the dishes for his table.

112—10. The world will not anxiously inquire who you are.

Who you are is the object complement.

112—11. It will ask of you, "What can you do?" What can you do is the object complement.

112—12. The peacock struts about, saying, "What a fine tail I have!"

What a fine tail I have is the object complement of saying. Saying modifies peacock.

112-13. He does not know which to choose.

Which to choose is the object complement of know. Which is the object complement of to choose.

112—14. No one can tell how or when or where he will die.

How or when or where he will die is the object complement of can tell.

112—15. Philosophers are still debating whether the will has any control over the current of thought in our dreams.

The object complement is all that follows debating. Whether, a conjunction, introduces the subordinate clause.

112—1. A peculiarity of English is, that it has so many borrowed words.

The clause, that it has so many borrowed words, is the attribute complement after is.

Note. For form of diagram see lower half of page 34.

112—2. Tweed's defiant question was, "What are you going to do about it?"

All that follows was is the attribute. To do modifies are going.

112—3. The question ever asked and never answered is, "Where and how am I to exist in the hereafter?"

All that follows is is the attribute. Am to exist is the predicate of the subordinate clause.

112-4. Hamlet's exclamation was, "What a piece of work is man!"

Note.—See same sentence, page 34.

112—5. The myth concerning Achilles is, that he was invulnerable in every part except the heel.

Concerning Achilles modifies myth, concerning being a preposition. What follows is is the attribute of the main predicate.

112—6. It has been proved that the earth is round.

That the earth is round modifies the subject it. See page 35 for diagram.

112—7. It is believed that sleep is caused by a diminution in the supply of blood to the brain.

All that follows believed modifies it, the subject.

112—8. The fact that mould, mildew, and yeast are plants is wonderful.

The clause, that mould, mildew, and yeast are plants, modifies the subject, fact.

113—9. Napoleon turned his Simplon road aside in order that he might save a tree mentioned by Cæsar.

The clause, in order that he might, etc., modifies turned.

Aside also modifies turned. Mentioned modifies tree.

In order that is a complex conjunction.

113—10. Shakespeare's metaphor, "Night's candles are burnt out," is one of the finest in literature.

Note.—See page 35 for the same sentence.

113—11. The shortest and sweetest verse in the Bible is this: "Jesus wept."

Jesus wept is in apposition with this.

113—12. This we know, that our future depends on our present.

All that follows know is in apposition with this. Future and present are both nouns.

113-13. Have birds any sense of why they sing?

Sense is modified by the phrase, of they sing why, in which the basis is a clause.

113—14. There has been some dispute about who wrote "Shakespeare's Plays."

There is an independent adverb. Dispute is modified by the explanatory phrase, about who wrote Shakespeare's plays.

113—15. We are not certain that an open sea surrounds the Pole.

Certain is modified adverbially by the clause, that an open sea, etc.

113—16. We are all anxious that the future shall bring us success and triumph.

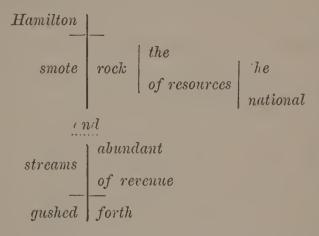
Anxious is modified adverbially by the clause following that word.

113—17. The Sandwich Islander is confident that the strength and valor of his slain enemy passes into himself.

Confident is modified by the clause that follows.

119—2. Hamilton smote the rock of the national resources, and abundant streams of revenue gushed forth.

The sentence is compound. It may be illustrated as follows:



119-3. Some are born great, some achieve greatness, and some have greatness thrust upon them.

In the last member, thrust is an objective complement after have.

119-5. Put not your trust in money, but put your money in trust.

Note.—See page 37 for the same sentence.

119-6. Ready writing 1 makes not good writing,2 but good writing 3 brings on ready writing 4.

Not modifies makes. Writing 2 is the object complement in the first member. On is an adverb, modifying brings.

119—7. Be temperate in youth, or you will have to be abstinent in old age.

Will have to be abstinent is the predicate of the second member. To be abstinent is the attribute complement.

119—8. Places near the sea are not extremely cold in winter, nor are they extremely warm in summer.

Near modifies places. (To) sea modifies near. Nor connects the two members.

119—9. Either Hamlet was mad, or he feigned madness admirably.

Either introduces, and or connects; they are correlatives.

119—10. People in the streets are carrying umbrellas, hence it must be raining.

Hence connects the two members.

119-11. The man takes exercise, therefore he is well.

Therefore connects the members.

119—12. The camel is the ship of the ocean of sand, the reindeer is the camel of the desert of snow.

The comma takes the place of a conjunction omitted.

119—13. Of thy unspoken word thou art master, thy spoken word is master of thee.

Here also the comma takes the place of the conjunction.

119-14. The ship leaps, as it were, from billow to billow.

As introduces the clause, it were. As it were is independent in construction, being parenthetical.

119—15. Religion—who can doubt it?—is the noblest of themes for the exercise of intellect.

Who can doubt it is an independent clause, being parenthetical. Noblest modifies theme understood.

119—16. What grave (these are the words of Wellesley, speaking of the two Pitts) contains such a father and such a son!

What modifies grave. Such and a modify father, also

son. All within the marks of parenthesis is independent. Speaking is in the objective after in understood.

123—1. Sin has a great many tools, but a lie is a handle which fits them all.

A great is an adverb, modifying many. Which fits them all modifies handle. All may be taken as the object of fits, and them as the object of a preposition; thus, fits all (of) them.

123—2. Some one has said that the milkman's favorite song should be, "Shall we gather at the river?"

The object complement of said is all that follows that word. The attribute complement of should be is all that follows be.

123—3. Some of the insects which are most admired, which are decorated with the most brilliant colors, and which soar on the most ethereal wings, have passed the greater portion of their lives in the bowels of the earth.

The three relative clauses, each introduced by which, modify insects.

123—4. Still the wonder grew, that one small head could carry all he knew.

Still modifies grew. All that follows grew modifies wonder, as an explanatory clause. That is understood after all.

123—5. When a man becomes overheated by working, running, rowing, or making furious speeches, the six or seven millions of perspiration-tubes pour out their fluid, and the whole body is bathed and cooled.

Millions is the subject. Pour is the predicate; it is modified by the introductory subordinate clause, When a man becomes, etc. Overheated is modified by the compound phrase following, by working, running, rowing, or making. Overheated is an attribute after becomes.

123—6. Milton said that he did not educate his daughters in the languages, because one tongue was enough for a woman.

All that follows said is the object complement. The clause, because one tongue, etc., modifies did educate. Enough is an attribute.

123—7. Glaciers, flowing down mountain-gorges, obey the law of rivers; the upper surface flows faster than the lower, and the centre faster than the adjacent sides.

All that follows the semicolon modifies law, the object complement of obey, being explanatory of that word. The explanatory portion is compound, and is equivalent to The upper surface flows faster than the lower (flows), and the centre (flows) faster than the adjacent sides (flow). The clauses introduced by than each modify the word faster preceding.

123—8. Not to wear one's best things every day is a maxim of New England thrift which is as <sup>1</sup> little disputed as <sup>2</sup> any verse in the catechism.

To wear is the subject of the principal clause. Day is in the objective after a preposition understood. Maxim is the attribute complement of is. The clause introduced by which modifies maxim. Little modifies disputed. As and as are correlatives, the first as modifying little, and the second connecting the clause, as any verse in the cate-chism (is disputed), which modifies as 1.

123—9. In Holland the stork is protected by law, because it eats the frogs and worms that would injure the dykes.

The clause introduced by because modifies is protected; the clause introduced by that would injure, etc. modifies frogs and worms.

123—10. It is one of the most marvellous facts in the natural world that, though hydrogen is highly inflammable, and oxygen

is a supporter of combustion, both, combined, form an element, water, which is destructive to fire.

It is the subject. All that follows world modifies the subject it, as an explanatory clause. Is one is the predicate of the principal clause. That is an introductory conjunction. Of the clause, that both, combined, form, etc., both is the subject. Combined modifies both. Water is in apposition with element, the object complement of form. The closing clause modifies element. The two clauses introduced by though modify form.

123—11. In your war of 1812, when your arms on shore were covered by disaster, when Winchester had been defeated, when the Army of the North-west had surrendered, and when the gloom of despondency hung, like a cloud over the land, who first relit the fires of national glory and made the welkin ring with the shouts of victory?

The main clause is, Who first relit, etc. The compound predicate is relit and made (to) ring. With shouts modifies ring. These verbs are modified by the phrase, in your war of 1812, and by the four clauses each introduced by when. Like is a conjunctive adverb, joining to hung the clause, like a cloud (hangs).

125—1. Whenever the wandering demon of Drunkenness finds a ship adrift, he steps on board, takes the helm, and steers straight for the Maelstrom.

The predicate is compound, consisting of steps, takes, and steers. Straight, an adverb, modifies steers. The clause introduced by whenever modifies the compound predicate. The predicate of this clause is finds adrift, adrift being the objective complement.

125—2. The energy which drives our locomotives and forces our steamships through the waves comes from the sun.

The predicate of the subordinate clause, drives and forces, is compound.

125—3. No scene is continually loved but one rich by joyful human labor; smooth in field, fair in garden, full in orchard.

But one = except one, modifies scene. One is modified by rich, smooth, fair, and full.

125—4. What is bolder than a miller's neck-cloth, which takes a thief by the throat every morning?

The clause, than a miller's neck-cloth (is bold) modifies bolder. The clause introduced by which modifies neck-cloth. Morning is the object of a preposition understood.

125—5. The setting sun stretched his celestial rods of light across the level landscape, and smote the rivers and the brooks and the ponds, and they became as blood.

Stretched and smote form the compound predicate. The object complement of smote is compound, consisting of rivers, brooks, and ponds. Of the second member became as blood is the predicate, as being an introductory conjunction, and blood an attribute.

125—6. Were the happiness of the next world as <sup>1</sup> closely apprehended as <sup>2</sup> the felicities of this, it were martyrdom to live.

It is the subject of the principal clause. To live modifies it, the subject, being explanatory. Were martyrdom is the predicate. The subordinate clause, consisting of all that precedes it, modifies were in the main clause. The connective is if understood. Apprehended is modified by closely, and closely by as 1. As 1 is modified by the clause, as the felicities of this (are apprehended).

126—7. There is a good deal of oratory in me, but I do'n't do' as well as I can in any one place, out of respect to the memory of Patrick Henry.

There is an independent adverb. In me modifies is. In the second member do do is the predicate. N't = not, modifies  $do^1$ . As well as I can (do) modifies  $do^2$ . The

first as modifies well; the second introduces the clause, as I can. The phrases, in place and out of respect, modify do.

126—8. Van Twiller's full-fed cheeks, which seemed to have taken toll of everything that went into his mouth, were curiously mottled and streaked with dusky red, like a Spitzenberg apple.

Cheeks is the subject, and were mottled and streaked, the predicate of the principal clause. Which seemed, etc. modifies cheeks. To have taken modifies seemed. That went, etc. modifies everything. The phrase, with dusky red, and the clause, like a Spitzenberg apple (is mottled and streaked), modify both verbs in the main clause. Like is a conjunctive adverb.

126—9. The evil of silencing the expression of opinion is,<sup>1</sup> that it is <sup>2</sup> robbing the human race.

All that follows  $is^1$  is the attribute of the chief predicate. That is a connecting conjunction. Of the attribute, which is a subordinate clause,  $is\ robbing$  is the predicate.

126—10. There is no getting along with Johnson; if his pistol misses fire, he knocks you down with the butt of it.

There is an independent adverb. Getting is the subject of the first member; it is modified by the adverb along. In the second member knocks is the predicate. Down, an adverb, modifies knocks. The clause introduced by if also modifies knocks.

126—11. We think in words; and when we lack <sup>1</sup> fit words, we lack <sup>2</sup> fit thoughts.

The clause introduced by when modifies lack 2.

126—12. To speak perfectly well one must feel that he has got to the bottom of his subject.

To speak, etc. modifies the predicate must feel. The object complement of must feel is the clause introduced by that.

126—13. Office confers no honor upon a man who is worthy of it, and it will disgrace every man who is not.

The clause, who is worthy modifies man. Who is not (worthy) modifies man.<sup>2</sup>

126—14. The men<sup>1</sup> whom men<sup>2</sup> respect, the women<sup>1</sup> whom women<sup>2</sup> approve, are the men<sup>3</sup> and women<sup>3</sup> who bless their species.

The clause, whom men respect, modifies men<sup>1</sup>. The clause, whom women approve, modifies women<sup>1</sup>. Men<sup>1</sup> and women<sup>1</sup> form the compound subject. Are men<sup>3</sup> and women<sup>3</sup> is the predicate. Both nouns in the predicate are modified by the clause, who bless, etc.

126—1. A ruler who appoints any man to an office, when there is in his dominions another man better qualified for it, sins against God and against the state.

The clause, who appoints, etc., modifies the subject ruler. When there is, etc. modifies appoints. There is an independent adverb. Qualified modifies man. Better modifies qualified.

126—2. We wondered whether the saltness of the Dead Sea was not Lot's wife in solution.

The object complement of wondered is the clause introduced by whether. Dead Sea is a complex noun. Was wife is the predicate of the subordinate clause. Not modifies was.

126—3. There is a class among us so conservative that they are afraid the roof will come down if you sweep off the cobwebs.

There is an independent adverb. Among us modifies is. Conservative modifies class, the subject. So modifies conservative. The clause introduced by that modifies the adverb so. The clause, if you sweep, etc., modifies will come. Off modifies sweep.

126—4. Kind hearts are more than coronets, and simple faith than Norman blood.

Than coronets (are) modifies more. Is more is understood after faith. Than Norman blood (is) modifies more understood.

126-5. All those things for which men plough, build, or sail, obey virtue.

Things is the subject and obey, the predicate, of the principal clause. The subordinate clause, for which men, etc., modifies things.

126—6. The sea licks your feet, its huge flanks purr very pleasantly for you: but it will crack your bones and eat you, for all that.

In the third member the predicate is compound, consisting of will crack and (will) eat. The phrase, for all that, modifies both will crack and (will) eat.

127-7. Of all sad words of tongue or pen, the saddest are these: "It might have been."

Words, understood after saddest, is the subject. Of tongue or pen modifies words. Of all sad words modifies the subject understood. Are these is the predicate. It might have been is in apposition with these.

127—8. I fear three newspapers more than a hundred thousand bayonets.

More modifies the predicate fear. The subordinate clause, than (I fear) a hundred thousand bayonets, modifies more. A hundred thousand is a complex adjective, modifying bayonets.

127—9. He that allows himself to be a worm must not complain if he is trodden on.

The clause, that allows, etc., modifies he. To be worm is an objective complement. The clause, if he is trodden on, modifies must complain.

127—10. It is better to write one word upon the rock than a thousand on the water or the sand.

It is the subject. To write one word upon the rock modifies it, being explanatory of the subject. The clause introduced by than (it is good to write) a thousand, etc. modifies better. A thousand is a complex adjective, modifying words understood.

127—11. A breath of New England's air is better than a sup of Old England's ale.

Is better is the predicate of the main clause. Better is modified by the subordinate clause, than a sup, etc. Is good is understood after ale, sup being the subject and is good, the predicate of the subordinate clause.

127—12. We are as 1 near to heaven by sea as 2 by land.

Are near is the predicate of the principal clause. As modifies near. As introduces the subordinate clause, as (we are near) by land, which modifies as.

127—13. No language that cannot suck up the feeding juices secreted for it in the rich mother-earth of common folk can bring forth a sound, lusty book.

Language is the subject, and can bring forth is the predicate, of the main clause. The clause, that cannot suck up, etc., modifies language. Cannot suck up is the predicate of the subordinate clause. Secreted modifies juices. Sound and lusty modify book.

127—14. Commend me to the preacher who has learned by experience what are human ills and what is human wrong.

The subject of the main clause is understood. Commend is the predicate. The clause, who has learned, etc., modifies preacher. The object complement of has learned are human ills are what and human wrong is what, in each of which what is the attribute.

127—15. He prayeth best 1 who loveth best 2 all things, both great and small; for the dear God who loveth us, he made and loveth all.

The clause, who loveth best, modifies he. Best modifies prayeth. Both and and are correlatives. Great and small modify things. The dear God who loveth us is independent by pleonasm. The clause, for he made, modifies prayeth.

155-1. Mount Marcy is not so high as Mount Washington.

So modifies high; as introduces the clause, Mount Washington (is high), modifying so.

155-2. As I passed by, I found an altar with this inscription.

As I passed by modifies found in the main clause. By modifies passed.

155—3. It must be raining, as men are carrying umbrellas.

As men are carrying umbrellas modifies must be raining, as being the connective.

155—5. Half-learned lessons slip from the memory as an icicle from the hand.

The subordinate clause, as an icicle (slips) etc., modifies slip.

155—6. If a slave's lungs breathe our air, that moment he is free.

Is free is the predicate of the principal clause. (At) moment modifies is. The clause introduced by if also modifies is.

155-7. If wishes were horses, all beggars might ride.

The first clause modifies might ride.

155—8. Who knows if one of the Pleiads is really missing? The object complement of *knows* is the clause introduced by *if*.

155—9. If the flights of Dryden are higher, Pope continues longer on the wing.

Longer modifies continues, the chief predicate. The clause introduced by if modifies continues.

156—10. England fears lest Russia may endanger British rule in India.

The subordinate clause, lest Russia, etc., is the object complement after fears.

156—11. Watch and pray, lest ye enter into temptation.

The clause introduced by *lest* modifies watch and pray as an adverbial element.

156—13. Many thousand years have gone by since the Pyramids were built.

Many modifies thousand. By modifies gone. The clause introduced by since modifies the predicate have gone. Years is here in the objective after of understood.

156—14. Since the Puritans could not be convinced, they were persecuted.

The subordinate clause introduced by since modifies were persecuted.

156—1. The Pharisee thanked God that he was not like other men.

The clause introduced by that modifies thanked. Was like is the predicate of the subordinate clause. Like is an adjective. A preposition is understood before men.

156—2. Vesuvius threw its lava so far that Herculaneum and Pompeii were buried.

Far, an adverb, modifies threw. So modifies far, and that, its correlative, introduces the subordinate clause, which modifies so.

156—3. The smith plunges his red-hot iron into water, that he may harden it.

That he may harden it modifies plunges, the predicate of the main clause.

156—4. Socrates said that he who might be better employed was idle.

All that follows said is the object complement of that verb. That is a conjunction, introducing the clause, he was idle. The clause, who might be better employed, modifies he.

156—5. We never tell our secrets to people that pump for them.

That pump for them modifies people, that being the subject of the clause.

156—6. The Aztecs were astonished when they saw the Spanish horses.

The clause beginning when they saw, etc. modifies were astonished.

156—7. November is the month when the deer sheds its horns.

The clause, when the deer sheds its horns, modifies month, when being a relative adverb = in which.

156—8. When the future is uncertain, make the most of the present.

Most is the object complement of make. The clause, When the future, etc., modifies make adverbially.

156—9. When the five great European races left Asia is a question.

The subject consists of the subordinate clause preceding is. When modifies left. Is question is the predicate of the sentence.

157—10. When judges accept bribes, what may we expect from common people?

What is the object complement of may expect. The clause, When judges accept bribes, modifies expect.

157—11. The dial instituted a formal inquiry, when hands, wheels, and weights protested their innocence.

The clause, when hands, wheels, etc., modifies instituted, the predicate of the main clause.

157—12. No one knows the place where Moses was buried.

The clause, Moses was buried where, modifies place. Where, a relative adverb, = in which.

157-13. Where Moses was buried is still a question.

Where Moses was buried is the subject of the main clause. Is question is the predicate. Still modifies is.

157-14. No one has been where Moses was buried.

Where Moses was buried in this sentence modifies has been.

157—15. Napoleon was a genius, while Wellington was a man of talents.

While in this sentence is equivalent to and or but, making the sentence compound.

157—16. While we sleep the body is rebuilt.

While we sleep modifies is rebuilt, the predicate of the main clause.

157—17. While Charles I. had many excellent traits, he was a bad king.

While Charles I. had many excellent traits modifies was, the predicate verb of the main clause.

157—1. Cæsar put the proffered crown aside, but he would fain have had it.

Aside modifies put; fain modifies would have had.

157—2. Take away honor and imagination and poetry from war, and it becomes carnage.

The object complement after take is compound, consisting of honor, imagination, and poetry.

- 157—6. Let but the commons hear this testament, and they would go and kiss dead Cæsar's wounds.
- (To) hear is the objective complement after let. Commons is the object complement of hear.
  - 157-7. Men are carrying umbrellas; it is raining.

The semicolon takes the place of the conjunction in connecting the members of the sentence.

157—8. Have ye brave sons? look in the next fierce brawl to see them die.

The subject of the main clause is understood. Look is the predicate. To see modifies look. (To) die modifies them. The subordinate clause, Have ye brave sons? modifies look, if being understood.

158—9. The senate knows this, the consul sees it, and yet the traitor lives.

And yet is a complex conjunction.

158—10. Take away the grandeur of his cause, and Washington is a rebel instead of the purest of patriots.

Away modifies take. Instead of (patriot) modifies is. The purest and of patriots modify patriot understood.

- 158-12. Should we fail, it can be no worse for us.
- (If) we should fail modifies worse.
- 158—13. Had the Plantagenets succeeded in France, there would never have been an England.

There is an independent adverb. England is the subject of the main clause. The clause, (if) the Plantagenets had succeeded, modifies would have been.

158—14. Were he my brother, I could do no more for him.

(If) he were my brother modifies could do. More is the object complement of could do.

158—15. Were I so disposed, I could not gratify the reader.

(If) I were so disposed modifies could gratify.

158—16. "Were I [Admiral Nelson] to die this moment, more frigates would be found written on my heart."

More frigates is the subject of the main clause. If I were to die this moment modifies the verb would be found. Admiral Nelson is in apposition with I, or it may be considered independent by pleonasm.

162-1. I did nothing but laugh.

But (to) laugh modifies nothing. But is a preposition.

162—2. It was once supposed that crystal is ice frozen so hard that it cannot be thawed.

The clause, that crystal is ice, etc., is explanatory of the subject, and modifies it. Frozen modifies ice. Hard modifies frozen. The clause, that it cannot, etc., modifies so.

162—3. What love equals a mother's?

What is an adjective, modifying love. Mother's modifies love understood.

162-4. There is nobody here but I.

Me should follow but used as a preposition. But me modifies nobody.

162-5. The fine arts were all but proscribed.

All but = nearly or almost is a complex adverb, modifying proscribed.

162—6. There's not a breeze but whispers of thy name.

But = that not, is a negative relative. But whispers = that whispers not, and modifies breeze.

162—7. The longest life is but a day.

But, an adverb, modifies is. Is day is the predicate.

162—8. What if the bee love not these barren boughs?

(It matters) is probably understood before what. The subordinate clause modifies the predicate verb understood.

162-9. That life is long which answer's life's great end.

That is an adjective, modifying life. Which answers, etc. modifies life, the subject.

162—10. What! I the weaker vessel?

What is an interjection. The copula am is understood after I.

162—11. Whom should I obey but thee?

The phrase, but thee, modifies whom.

162—12. What by industry and what by economy, he had amassed a fortune.

What and what, meaning partly, are adverbs, modifying the phrases, by industry and by economy.

162—13. I long ago found that out.

Found out, a complex verb, is the predicate. That is the object complement. Ago is an adverb, modifying found out. Long modifies ago.

162-14. One should not always eat what he likes.

What is in the objective after eats; also after likes.

162—15. There's not a white hair on your face but should have its effect of gravity.

There is an independent adverb. But is a negative relative, equivalent to that not. But should have = that should not have, and modifies the noun hair.

162—16. It was a look that, but for its quiet, would have seemed disdain.

The clause, that would have, etc., modifies look. The phrase, but for its quiet = except for its quiet, modifies would have seemed.

162-17. He came but to return.

But is an adverb, modifying to return.

182—1. Not to know what happened before we were born is to be always a child.

To know is the subject. What happened, etc. is the object complement of know. Before we were born modifies happened. To be child is the attribute of is in the main clause, child being in the nominative after to be.

182—2. His being a Roman saved him from being made a prisoner.

Being is the subject. Roman is in the nominative after being. From being made prisoner modifies saved. Being made is in the objective after from, and prisoner in the nominative after being made.

182-3. I am this day weak, though anointed king.

Day is in the objective after a preposition understood. The clause, though (I am) anointed king, modifies am. King is in the nominative after am anointed.

182—4. What made Cromwell a great man was his unshaken reliance on God.

What is in the nominative to made and in the nominative to was. Man is a factitive or objective complement, after made.

182-5. Amos, the herdsman of Tekoa, was not a prophet's son.

Herdsman is in apposition with Amos, the subject. A modifies prophet's.

182-6. Arnold's success as teacher was remarkable.

Arnold's modifies success. Teacher is in apposition with Arnold's. As is an introductory conjunction.

183-7. Worship thy Creator, God; and obey his Son, the Master, King, and Saviour of men.

God is in apposition with Creator. Master, King, and Saviour are in apposition with Son.

183—8. Bear ye one another's burdens.

Ye is the subject. One is in apposition with ye.

183-9. What art thou, execrable shape, that darest advance?

Shape is in the nominative independent by address. That darest advance modifies the subject thou. (To) advance modifies darest.

183—10. O you hard hearts! you cruel men of Rome!

You is in the nominative independent by exclamation. Hearts is in apposition with you. You in the second expression is also in the nominative independent by exclamation. Men is in apposition with you.

183-11. Everybody acknowledges Shakespeare to be the greatest of dramatists.

To be (dramatist) is an objective complement after acknowledges. Shakespeare is the object complement. Greatest and of dramatists modify dramatist understood.

183—12. Think'st thou 1 this heart could feel a moment's joy, thou 2 being absent?

Thou being absent is independent in construction. Thou is the subject, and think'st, the predicate of the principal clause. The clause, this heart could feel, etc., is the object complement of think'st.

183—13. Our great forefathers had left him naught to conquer but his country.

Him is in the objective after a preposition understood.

Naught is the object complement of had left. To conquer and the phrase, but country, modify naught.

183-14. I will attend to it myself.

Myself is in apposition with I.

183—15. This news of papa's puts me all in a flutter.

The phrase, of papa's, modifies news. All is an adverb, modifying the phrase, in a flutter. Some authorities would use papa's as a possessive, limiting an uncertain noun understood. It is really equivalent to both the possessive and the objective, but its use here puts it in the objective after the preposition.

183-16. What means that hand upon that breast of thine?

Hand is the subject. Means what is the predicate. Upon that breast modifies hand. Of thine modifies breast, thine being in the objective.

200—1. The lady is accomplished.

Accomplished is an attribute.

200-2. The task was not accomplished in a day.

Was accomplished is the predicate.

200—3. Are you prepared to recite?

Prepared is an attribute. To recite modifies prepared.

200—4. Dinner was soon prepared.

Was prepared is the predicate verb.

200-5. A shadow was mistaken for a foot-bridge.

200-6. You are mistaken.

In (5) was mistaken is the predicate verb; in (6) mistaken is the attribute after are.

200-7. The man was drunk 1 before the wine was drunk 2.

Drunk is an attribute; was drunk is the predicate verb.

200-8. The house is situated on the bank of the river.

Is situated is the predicate verb.

200—9. I am obliged to you.

Obliged is an attribute.

200—10. I am obliged to do this.

Am obliged is the predicate verb.

200—11. The horse is tired.

Tired is an attribute.

200—12. A fool and his money are soon parted.

Are parted is a predicate verb.

200—13. The tower is inclined.

Inclined is an attribute.

200-14. My body is inclined by years.

Is inclined is the predicate verb.



## SENTENCES

FROM

## SWINTON'S ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

105—3. Vanished is the ancient splendor, and before my dreamy eye

Wave these mingled shapes and figures, like a faded tapestry.

Splendor is in the nominative as subject; eye is in the objective after before. Shapes and figures are used as subjects. Tapestry is in the nominative to a verb understood.

106—9. His spear, to equal which the tallest pine Hewn on Norwegian hills to be the mast Of some great ammiral were but a wand, He walked with, to support uneasy steps

Over the burning marle.

Spear is object after with in the fourth line. Pine is the subject of were in line three. Hills is in the objective after on. Ammiral is in the objective after of. Wand is in the nominative after were. Steps is the direct object of support. Marle is in the objective after over.

106-10. The gushing flood the tartans dyed.

Flood is in the nominative to dyed. Tartans is in the objective after dyed.

106—11. Lives of great men all remind us

We can make our lives sublime,

And, departing, leave behind us

Footprints on the sands of time.

Lives is in the nominative to remind. Lives in line two is the object of make sublime. Departing is a participle, modifying we. Footprints is the object of leave.

106—13. Leaves have their time to fall
And flowers to wither at the North Wind's breath.

Flowers is in the nominative to have understood. North Wind's is a complex noun in the possessive, limiting breath.

106—15. The only, the perpetual dirge

That's heard there is the sea-bird's cry,

The mournful murmur of the surge,

The cloud's deep voice, the wind's low sigh.

Dirge is the subject. Cry, surge, voice, and sigh are all in the nominative after is.

106—16. The patriarch made Joseph a coat of many colors.

Joseph is in the objective after for understood. Coat is the direct object of made.

106-17. Lend your neighbors a helping hand.

Neighbors is in the objective after to understood. Hand is the direct object of lend.

106—18. We forgive our friends their faults.

Friends is the direct object of forgive. Faults is in the objective after for understood.

106—19. Then give humility a coach-and-six,

Justice a conqueror's sword, or truth a gown,

Or public spirit its great cure, a crown.

Humility is in the objective after to understood. Justice, truth, and spirit are each in the objective after to

understood. Coach-and-six, sword, gown, cure, are all direct objects of give. Crown is in apposition with cure.

106—20. He chooses company, but not the squire's.

Squire's limits the noun company understood.

106—2. The emperor Kaoti, a soldier of fortune, marched against the Huns.

Soldier is in apposition with Kaoti.

107-3. 'Tis I, Hamlet the Dane.

Hamlet is in apposition with I, and Dane is in apposition with Hamlet.

107—5. There, swinging wide at her moorings, lay
The Somerset, British man-of-war—
A phantom ship.

Man-of-war and ship are in apposition with Somerset.

107-8. There were two fathers in this ghastly crew.

Fathers is the subject of were.

107—9. Brevity is the soul of wit.

Soul is in the nominative after is.

107-10. The proper study of mankind is man.

Man is in the nominative after is.

107—11. The principle which gave a peculiar coloring to Isabella's mind was piety.

Piety is in the nominative after was.

107—13. Others, their blue eyes with tears o'erflowing, Stand, like Ruth, amid the golden corn.

Eyes is in the objective after with understood. Ruth is in the nominative to stood understood. Overflowing modifies eyes.

The hill-range stood
Transfigured in the silver flood
Its blown snows flashing cold and keen.

Snows is a noun in the objective after with understood.

107—15. Success being hopeless, preparations were made for a retreat.

Success is in the nominative absolute before being.

107—16. Uriel, no wonder if thy perfect sight,

Amid the sun's bright circlet where thou sitt'st,

See far and wide.

Uriel is in the nominative independent by address. Wonder is in the nominative after is understood (It is no wonder). Far and wide are adverbs, modifying see.

107—17. Rise, crowned with light, imperial Salem, rise! Salem is in the nominative independent by address.

107—18. With that she fell distract,
And, her attendants absent, swallowed fire.

Attendants is in the nominative absolute before being understood.

107—20. Listen, my children, and you shall hear Of the midnight ride of Paul Revere.

Children is in the nominative independent by address.

107—21. O Caledonia! stern and wild,

Meet nurse for a poetic child,

Land of brown heath and shaggy wood,

Land of the mountain and the flood.

Note.—See page 84 for this sentence.

107—22. O lonely tomb in Moab's land,
O dark Bethpeor's hill,
Speak to these curious hearts of ours
And teach them to be still.

Tomb and hill are in the nominative independent by address.

107—23. The antechambers were crowded all night with lords and councillors.

Night is in the objective after a preposition understood.

107—24. Home they brought her warrior dead.

Home is an adverb. By some authorities it is given as a noun.

107-25. Patrick Henry was nearly six feet high.

Feet is in the objective after by understood. Swinton calls it an objective adverbial.

107—26. Not without deep solicitude I saw the angry clouds gathering in the horizon, north and south.

North and south are nouns in the objective after prepositions understood:

107—27. He that was dead came forth bound hand and foot. Hand and foot is a complex adverb, modifying bound.

107—28. You came three times last week, but did you come the nearest way?

Times is in the objective after a preposition understood; or in the objective, according to some, without a governing word. Week and way are each in the objective after a preposition understood.

107—30. Milton, thou should'st be with us at this hour.

Milton is in the nominative independent by address.

112-1. We can show you where he lies.

You is in the objective after to understood.

112—6. Teach me thy statutes.

Me is in the objective after teach. Statutes is the direct object of teach.

112—8. Methought my request was heard, for it seemed to me as though the stains of manhood were passing from me, and I were relapsing into the purity and simplicity of childhood.

Methought is equivalent to I thought. As though is a complex conjunction.

113—9. I know not what course others may take; but as for me, give me liberty or give me death.

Note.—See page 75 for the discussion of this sentence.

113-10. Who was the thane lives yet.

He is understood before who.

What in me is dark, Illumine; what is low, raise and support.

Note.—See page 99 for the discussion of this sentence.

113—13. Ah! little they think who delight in the strains, How the heart of the minstrel is breaking.

Who is in the nominative to delight. How the heart, etc. is the direct object of think.

113—14. Oh that those lips had language! Life has passed With me but roughly since I heard thee last.

Those lips are thine—thy own sweet smile I see,
The same that oft in childhood solaced me.

I wish is understood after oh. Thine is in the nominative after are.

113—16. Roll on, thou deep and dark blue Ocean, roll!

Thou is independent by address. Ocean is in apposition with thou.

113-17. Those who came to laugh remained to pray.

Who is in the nominative to came.

113—18. We two set upon you four.

Two is used as a noun in apposition with we. Four is here a noun in apposition with you.

113—19. England herself will sooner treat for peace with us on a footing of independence.

Herself is in apposition with the noun England.

113-20. O ye Romans, you are poor slaves.

Ye is independent, and Romans is in apposition with ye.

113-21. What do you mean, you blockhead?

What is in the objective after mean. You is in the nominative independent, and blockhead is in apposition with you.

113—22. On these and kindred thoughts intent I lay In silence, musing by my comrade's side, He [being] also silent.

He is in the nominative absolute before being.

113-23. Thou away, the very birds are mute.

Thou is in the nominative absolute before being understood.

113 -24. God from the mount of Sinai, whose gray top Shall tremble, he descending, will himself Ordain them laws.

Whose is in the possessive, limiting top. He is in the nominative absolute before descending. Himself is in apposition with God. Them is in the objective after for understood.

115—3. Three fishers went sailing away to the west. West is here used as a noun.

115—4. Roll on, thou deep and dark blue Ocean, roll!

Dark blue is a complex adjective, modifying ocean.

115—5. For of all sad words of tongue or pen,
The saddest are these—"It might have been."

Saddest is an adjective, modifying words understood.

115—7. Like other dull men, the king was all his life suspicious of superior people.

All, an adjective, modifies life.

116---9. Each ivied arch and pillar lone Pleads haughtily for glories gone.

Lone, an adjective, modifies pillar; gone modifies glories.

117—1. The rainbow comes and goes,

And lovely is the rose;

The moon doth with delight

Look round her when the heavens are bare;

Waters on a starry night

Are beautiful and fair.

Lovely is a predicate adjective, modifying rose. Bare is a predicate adjective, modifying heavens. Beautiful and fair are predicate adjectives referring to waters.

118—2. "Oh, sir," said the good woman, "he was such a likely lad—so sweet-tempered, so kind to every one around him, so dutiful to his parents."

Likely modifies lad. Sweet-tempered, kind, and dutiful refer to he.

118—3. The stately homes of England, How beautiful they stand!

Beautiful is a predicate adjective. The clause is equivalent to How beautiful they are!

118—4. Why call ye me good?

Good is a factitive adjective, referring to me.

Or, if a path be dangerous known, The danger's self is law alone.

Dangerous is an abstract adjective after to be understood.

118-6. Come when the heart beats high and warm.

High and warm are adjectives after beats, which is equivalent to is.

118—7. Thus, from afar, each dim-discovered scene
More pleasing seems than all the past have been.

More pleasing is a predicate adjective. The expression seems more pleasing = is more pleasing.

By heaven, I change
My thought, and hold thy valor light
As that of some vain carpet-knight.

Light is a factitive adjective, referring to valor, hold light being the predicate.

120-2. Then shrieked the timid.

Shrieked, a verb, agrees with timid, the subject.

120—9. Then rose from sea to sky the wild farewell.

Rose is a verb, agreeing with farewell, the subject.

120—13. In words, as fashions, the same rule will hold,
Alike fantastic if too new or old;
Be not the first by whom the new is tried,
Nor yet the last to lay the old aside.

Will hold is a verb, agreeing with rule. Be agrees with thou or you understood.

123—1. To be virtuous is to be happy.

To be virtuous is used here as the subject, and to be happy as the attribute of the sentence; the infinitive in each is in the nominative case.

123—2. Seeing is believing.

Seeing, a participle used as a noun, is the subject, and believing is the predicate nominative of the sentence.

123—3. I remember to have seen William at the rink.

To have seen is the direct object of remember.

123—4. Philosophy teaches us to endure afflictions.

To endure is used as the direct object of teaches.

123—6. It is painful to see an animal suffering. *To see*, etc. modifies *it*, being explanatory.

123—7. His having failed is not surprising.

Having failed is used as the subject.

123-8. I recommended turning a new leaf.

Turning, a participial noun, is the direct object of recommended.

123—9. Throwing their muskets aside, the soldiers rushed on the foe.

Throwing is a participle, relating to soldiers.

123—10. Born to a crown, Louis XVI. died on the scaffold. Born is a participle, relating to Louis XVI.

123—11. They wish to turn him from keeping bad company. To turn is the direct object of wish. Keeping is in the objective after from.

123—12. What we always put off doing, Clearly we shall never do.

Doing is a participial noun in the objective after put off, a complex verb.

124—2. Ill-fared it then with Roderick Dhu. *Ill* is an adverb, modifying *fared*.

124—4. The world was all before them where to choose Their place of rest, and Providence their guide.

Where is a relative adverb, modifying to choose. All is an adverb, modifying before them.

124—6. And when above the surges
They saw his crest appear,
All Rome sent forth a rapturous cry,
And even the ranks of Tuscany
Could scarce forbear to cheer.

When is a conjunctive adverb. Scarce = scarcely, modifies could forbear.

124—7. Why should we shrink from what we cannot shun? Why is an adverb, modifying should shrink.

125—2. A murmuring whisper through the nunnery ran.

Through, a preposition, shows the relation between numery and ran.

125—6. Through all the wild October days the clash and din resounded in the air.

Through is a preposition, showing the relation between days and resounded.

125—7. But on the hill the golden-rod, and the aster in the wood,

And the yellow sunflower by the brook, in autumn beauty stood.

On is a preposition, showing the relation between hill and golden-rod. In shows the relation between beauty and stood.

125—8. There is a special providence in the fall of a sparrow.

In, a preposition, shows the relation between fall and is.

125—10. In the spring of 1493, while the court was still at Barcelona, letters were received from Christopher Columbus, announcing his return to Spain, and the successful achievement of his great enterprise by the discovery of land beyond the western ocean.

In, a preposition, shows the relation between spring and were received. By, a preposition, shows the relation between discovery and achievement. Beyond, a preposition, shows the relation between ocean and lying understood.

126—2. Some murmur when their sky is clear
And wholly bright to view,
If one small speck of dark appear
In their great heaven of blue.

And, a conjunction, connects clear and bright. If is a subordinate conjunction, connecting the last two lines with the preceding two.

126—3. Twas noon,
And Helon knelt beside a stagnant pool
In the lone wilderness.

And connects the two main clauses between which it stands.

126—4. Millions of spiritual creatures walk the earth unseen, Both when we wake and when we sleep.

Both—and are correlative conjunctions, both being introductory and and, the connective.

142—1. Flashed all their sabres bare.

Sabres is the subject. Bare is a predicate adjective.

142-2. When that the poor have cried, Cæsar hath wept.

In the subordinate clause, *poor*, used as a noun, is the subject. That is superfluous, but when that may be considered a conjunctive adverb.

142—3. Beyond that I seek not to penetrate the veil.

Beyond is a preposition, showing the relation between that and penetrate.

142-5. To do aught good never will be our task.

To do is the subject. Aught is the direct object. Task is in the nominative after will be.

142—6. Jerusalem has derived some reputation from the number and importance of her memorable sieges.

Importance is in the objective after a preposition understood.

142—7. The service past, around the pious man, With ready zeal, each honest rustic ran.

Service is in the nominative absolute before being understood. Around shows the relation between man and ran.

142—8. Seasons return, but not to me returns
Day, or the sweet approach of even or morn.

Day is the subject of returns. Approach also is in the nominative to returns.

142-9. Whatever is, is right.

Note.—See page 21 for this sentence.

Dust thou art, to dust returnest, Was not spoken of the soul.

Note.—See page 70 for this sentence.

Hath reared these venerable columns; thou Didst weave this verdant roof.

Father is in the nominative independent by address.

145—2. You say you are a better soldier.

The direct object of say is all that follows that word.

145—4. Pleasantly rose next morning the sun on the village of Grand-Pré.

Sun is the subject of rose. Morning is in the objective after a preposition understood.

145—5. One morn a Peri at the gate of heaven stood disconsolate.

Morn is in the objective after a preposition understood. Peri is the subject of stood. Disconsolate is an adjective attribute. Stood disconsolate = was disconsolate.

145—6. Where De Soto was buried cannot be determined.

The subject of the main clause is De Soto was buried where.

145—7. A little learning is a dangerous thing;
Drink deep, or taste not the Pierian spring.

Learning is the subject, and thing, the attribute noun, of the first member. Spring is the direct object of taste.

145—8. He prayeth best who loveth best
All things both great and small;
For the dear God who loveth us,
He made and loveth all.

Note.—See page 249.

146—9. The Accusing Spirit, which flew up to heaven's chancery with the oath, blushed as he gave it in; and the Recording Angel, as he wrote it down, dropped a tear upon the word, and blotted it out forever.

Note.—See page 72 for this sentence.

146—10. We know that if we could cause this structure to ascend, not only till it reached the skies, but till it pierced them, its broad surfaces could still contain but part of that which, in an age of knowledge, hath already been spread over the earth, and which history charges itself with making known to all future times.

Structure to ascend is the direct object of cause. Not only and but are correlatives. Till it reached and till it pierced modify to ascend. But is an adjective, modifying part. Making known is used as a participial noun, in the objective after with.

146—11. Then methought the air grew denser, perfumed from an unseen censer

Swung by seraphim whose footfalls tinkled on the tufted floor.

"Wretch," I cried, "thy God hath lent thee 1—by these angels he hath sent thee 2

Respite 1—respite 2 and nepenthe from thy memories of Lenore!

Quaff, oh quaff this kind nepenthe and forget this lost Lenore!"

Quoth the raven—Nevermore!"

Methought = I thought. Perfumed, a participle, modifies air. Swung, a participle, modifies censer. Wretch is independent, but the whole expression, "Wretch, thy God," etc., is the direct object of cried. Thee 1 and thee 2 are each

in the objective after a preposition. Respite<sup>1</sup> is the direct object of hath sent. Respite<sup>2</sup> and nepenthe are in the objective after hath sent understood. Nevermore is a noun, the direct object of quoth. Raven is the subject of quoth.

153—1. Outflew

Millions of flaming swords, drawn from the thighs Of mighty cherubim.

Millions is the subject and outflew the predicate. Drawn, a participle, modifies swords.

With a slow and noiseless footstep Comes that messenger divine.

Messenger is the subject. Divine, an adjective, modifies messenger.

153—3. The hawthorn bush, with seats beneath the shade For talking age and whispering lovers made.

Talking is an adjective, modifying age, and whispering, an adjective, modifying lovers. Made is a participle, modifying seats.

153—4. The younger guest purloined the glittering prize. Glittering is an adjective, modifying prize.

153—5. The service past, around the pious man, With steady zeal, each honest rustic ran.

Past is a participle, relating to service.

153—6. The wretch, concentred all in self,
Living, shall forfeit fair renown,
And, doubly dying, shall go down
To the vile dust, from whence he sprung,
Unwept, unhonored, and unsung.

Concentred is a participle, modifying wretch. Living and dying, participles, also modify wretch. Down, an adverb, modifies shall go. Whence is here used as a noun after from. Unwept, unhonored, and unsung are predicate adjectives, modifying wretch.

153-7. The patient face that once had lain upon the bed was glorified and radiant; but his heart found out his sister among all the host.

Glorified and radiant are predicate adjectives after was. Found out is a complex verb, agreeing with heart. All is an adjective, modifying host.

153—8. First in war, first in peace, first in the hearts of his countrymen, Washington was second to none in the humble and endearing scenes of private life.

First, first, and first are adjectives, referring to Washington. Second is a predicate adjective, referring to Washington. None is an adjective pronoun. Humble and endearing are adjectives, modifying scenes.

154—9. How dear to this heart are the scenes of my child-hood,

When fond recollection presents them to view!

Dear is a predicate adjective after are.

154—10. This day I was gratified with what I had often desired to witness—the condition of a sea in a tempest. I had contemplated the ocean in all its other phases, and they are almost innumerable. At one time it is seen reposing in perfect stillness under the blue sky and bright sun. At another, slightly ruffled, and then its motion causes his rays to tremble and dance in broken fragments of silvery or golden light—and the sight is dazzled by following the track from whence his beams are reflected—while all besides seems to frown in the darkness of its ripple.

Gratified is a predicate adjective, referring to I. What has a double construction; it is in the objective after with and in the objective after witness. Condition is in apposition with what as the direct object of witness. Innumerable is a predicate adjective after are. Reposing is a participle, modifying it. Another is an adjective pronoun in the objective after at. Ruffled is a participle, modify-

ing it understood. Following is a participle, used as a noun in the objective after by. Whence is used as a noun in the objective after from. Besides is an adjective, relating to all.

160—1. Now Jove suspends his golden scales in air, Weighs the men's wit against the lady's hair.

Men's is in the possessive and modifies wit; lady's is in the possessive and modifies hair.

160—2. Little-minded people's thoughts move in such small circles that five minutes' conversation gives you an arc long enough to determine their whole curve.

Little-minded, an adjective, modifies people's. People's is a noun in the possessive and modifies thoughts. Five is an adjective modifying minutes, and minutes is a noun in the possessive, modifying conversation.

161—4. Tell me what thy lordly name is on the Night's Plutonian shore.

Night's is a noun in the possessive, limiting shore. Plutonian is an adjective, modifying shore.

161-7. 'Twas made of the white snail's pearly shell.

White is an adjective, modifying snail's. Snail's is in the possessive, modifying shell.

Quench the timber's falling embers,

Quench the red leaves in December's

Hoary rime and chilly spray.

Timber's is in the possessive and modifies embers. December's is a noun in the possessive and modifies rime and spray.

161—9. Let all the ends thou aim'st at be thy country's [ends], thy God's and truth's.

Country's, God's, and truth's are in the possessive, modifying ends understood.

161—10. Oh, well for the fishermen's boy
That he shouts with his sister at play.

Well is a predicate adjective after is understood. Fisherman's is a noun in the possessive, modifying boy. That he shouts, etc., an explanatory clause, modifies it understood.

163-1. 'Tis I, Hamlet the Dane.

Note.—See same sentence, page 263.

163—2. At midnight, in the forest shades,
Bozzaris ranged his Suliote band,
True as the steel of their tried blades,
Heroes in heart and hand.

True, an adjective, modifies band. Heroes is in apposition with band, in the objective.

163—4. There, swinging wide at her moorings, lay
The Somerset, British man-of war—
A phantom ship.

Note.—See same sentence, page 263.

163—5. So work the honey-bees,
Creatures that by a rule in nature teach
The art of order to a peopled kingdom.

Honey-bees is the subject. Creatures is in apposition with honey-bees.

163—6. That best portion of a good man's life—His little, nameless, unremembered acts
Of kindness and of love.

Acts is in apposition with portion, which is in the objective. The preceding lines are

(With) Feelings, too, Of unremembered pleasure; such perlaps, As have no slight or trivial influence On that best portion, etc.

163—7. It is seldom that the father and the son, he 1 who has borne the weight, and he 2 who has been brought up in the lustre

of the diadem, exhibit equal capacity for the administration of affairs.

 $He^{1}$  is in apposition with *father*, and  $he^{2}$  is in apposition with son, both being in the nominative to *exhibit*.

167—2. Not a soldier discharged his farewell shot.

Shot is the direct object of discharged.

167—4. Their furrow oft the stubborn glebe has broke.

Furrow is the subject, and glebe the object, of has broke.

167—5. Beaux banish beaux, and coaches 1 coaches 2 drive.

Coaches<sup>1</sup> is the subject, and coaches<sup>2</sup> the direct object of drive.

167—6. The gushing flood the tartans dyed.

Note. See page 261 for this sentence.

167—7. Me he restored, and him he hanged.

Me is the object of restored, and him is the object of hanged.

167—8. Knowledge in general expands the mind, exalts the faculties, refines the taste of pleasure, and opens innumerable sources of intellectual enjoyment.

Mind, faculties, tastes, and sources are all direct objects.

167—9. For my own part, I have ever believed, and do now know, that there are witches.

The clause, that there are witches, is the direct object of believed and do know.

167—11. They follow an adventurer whom 1 they fear, and obey a power which they hate; we serve a monarch whom 2 we love—a God whom 3 we adore.

Whom is the direct object of fear; which is the direct object of hate; monarch and God are the direct objects of serve; whom is the direct object of love; and whom is the direct object of adore.

167—12. Let me live a life of faith, Let me die thy people's death.

Life is the direct object of live, and death the direct object of die.

167—13. He gathered new and greater armies from his own land—from subjugated lands. He called forth the young and brave—one from every household—from the Pyrenees to the Zuyder Zee—from Jura to the ocean. He marshalled them into long and majestic columns, and went forth to seize that universal dominion which seemed almost within his grasp.

Armies is the direct object of gathered. Young and brave are here used as nouns, direct objects of called forth. One is in apposition with young and brave. Them is the direct object of marshalled. Dominion is the direct object of to seize. Almost, an adverb, modifies within grasp.

172—1. Tell me not in mournful numbers
Life is but an empty dream.

Me is in the objective after a preposition understood. But is an adverb, modifying is. Dream is a predicate nominative.

172—2. The grave is not its goal.

Goal is in the nominative after is.

172—3. It is I—be not afraid.

I is in the nominative after is.

172—4. Breathes there a man with soul so dead,
Who never to himself hath said,
This is my own, my native land?

The clause, who never, etc., modifies man. The last line is the direct object of hath said. Land is the predicate nominative after is.

172-5. The proper study of mankind is man.

Study is the subject, and man the attribute of the sentence.

173—8. The other shape 1—

If shape 2 it 1 might be called that shape 3 had none
Distinguishable in member, joint, or limb;
Or substance might be called that shadow seem'd,
For each seem'd either: black it 2 stood as night.

Shape is in the nominative independent by pleonasm. Shape is the predicate nominative after might be called. That shape had, etc. modifies it i. That is the subject of had. Shape is the direct object of had. None is an adjective, modifying shape i. Distinguishable is an adjective, modifying shape i. If is understood after or in the fourth line, and it is understood after substance. Substance is the predicate nominative after might be called. That shadow seem'd modifies it understood. Shadow is the predicate nominative after seem'd. In the last line each is the subject and either the predicate nominative. Black is an attributive adjective. Black it stood = it was black, is the main clause. Night is the subject of a verb understood.

175—1. The very fairest flowers usually wither the most quickly.

Very, an adverb, modifies fairest. Usually and most quickly modify wither. The is an adverb, modifying most.

175-2. Slowly and sadly we laid him down.

Slowly, sadly, and down are adverbs, modifying laid.

175—3. And now 1 a bubble bursts, and now 2 a world.

 $Now^{1}$  is an adverb, modifying bursts; and  $now^{2}$  modifies bursts understood.

175—4. For them no more the blazing hearth shall burn.

More, an adverb, modifies shall burn, and no modifies more.

175—5. Ill blows the wind that profits nobody.

Ill is an adjective, referring to wind.

175—6. Freely 1 we serve because we freely 2 love.

Freely is an adverb, modifying serve. Freely is an adverb, modifying love. Because is a conjunctive adverb.

175—7. When here but three days since I came, Bewildered in pursuit of game,
All seemed as 1 peaceful and as 2 still
As 3 the mist slumbering on you hill.

When is a conjunctive adverb, connecting the first two lines as a subordinate clause with the third line as the principal clause. Here is an adverb, modifying came. But, an adverb, modifies three. Since is an adverb, modifying came. Bewildered is a participle, modifying I. As modifies peaceful; as modifies still. Peaceful and still are predicate adjectives. As is a conjunctive adverb. Mist is in the nominative to a verb (is) understood. Slumbering is a participle, modifying mist.

179—1. Fools who came to scoff remained to pray. Who refers to fools as its antecedent.

179—2. This petulance ruined Essex, who had to deal with a spirit naturally as proud as his own.

Who had to deal, etc. modifies Essex. Own is the subject of was proud, understood.

179—3. Shall he alone whom rational we call
Be pleased with nothing, if not blessed with all?

Shall be pleased agrees with he. Whom is in the objective after call. Rational is a factitive adjective.

я

179-4. A land of slaves shall ne'er be mine.

Mine is the subject of the sentence. It may also be construed as in the nominative after shall be.

179—5. Some natural tears they dropped, but wiped them soon.

Wiped agrees with they understood. Tears is the direct object of dropped.

179—6. They [the Indians] are shrinking before the mighty tide which is pressing them away; they must soon hear the roar of the last wave which will settle over them for ever.

Which refers to tide. Which refers to wave.

179—7. Cold is thy brow, my son! and I am chill, As to my bosom I have tried to press thee.

Cold is a predicate adjective after is. Chill is also a predicate adjective after am. As is a conjunctive adverb. To my bosom modifies press.

Woodman, spare that tree;
Touch not a single bough;
In youth it sheltered me,
And I'll protect it now.
'Twas my forefather's hand
That placed it near his cot;
Then, woodman, let it stand;
Thy axe shall harm it not.

Woodman is in the nominative independent by address. Not is an adverb, modifying touch. In the fifth line it is the subject. Hand is a predicate nominative. The line, That placed, etc., modifies it, the subject. Cot is in the objective after a preposition understood. Then is an introductory adverb. (To) stand modifies let.

187—1. To him who in the love of Nature holds
Communion with her visible forms, she speaks
A various language.

To shows the relation between him and speaks (speaks to him).

187—2. The eulogium pronounced on the character of the State of South Carolina, by the honorable gentleman, for her Revolutionary and other merits, meets my hearty concurrence.

By shows the relation between gentleman and pronounced. For shows the relation between merits and pronounced.

187—3. Into 1 the jaws of death, into 2 the mouth of hell, Rode the six hundred.

Into 1 shows the relation between jaws and rode. Into 2 shows the relation between mouth and rode.

187—4. At midnight, in his guarded tent,

The Turk was dreaming of the hour

When Greece, her knee in suppliance bent,

Should tremble at his power.

At shows the relation between midnight and was dreaming. In  $^1$  shows the relation between tent and was dreaming. In  $^2$  shows the relation between suppliance and bent.

187—5. But now no sound of laughter was heard amongst the foes;

A wild and wrathful clamor from all the vanguard rose.

From shows the relation between vanguard and rose.

187—6. Run to your houses, fall upon your knees, Pray to the gods to intermit the plague

That needs must light on this ingratitude.

Needs is an adverb, modifying must light. To intermit modifies pray. The clause, That needs, etc., modifies plague.

187—7. The trees are now in their fullest foliage and brightest verdure; the woods are gay with the clustered flowers of the laurel; the air is perfumed by the sweetbrier and the wild rose; the meadows are enamelled with clover-blossoms; while the young apple, the peach, and the plum begin to swell, and the cherry to glow among the green leaves.

In shows the relation between foliage and verdure, and

the verb are. By shows the relation between sweetlrier and rose, and the verb is perfumed. Begins is understood before to glow.

190—1. Lightly and brightly breaks away

The morning from her mantle gray.

And connects the adverbs lightly and brightly.

190—2. Right sharp and quick the bells all night Rang out from Bristol town.

And connects the adverbs sharp and quick.

190—3. Men must work and <sup>1</sup> women must weep, Though storms be hidden and <sup>2</sup> waters deep.

And 1 connects the two clauses, men must work and women must weep. And 2 connects storms be hidden and waters (be) deep. Though is a subordinate conjunction, connecting the clauses in the second line with those in the first.

190—4. A wise man will make haste to forgive, because he knows the true value of time, and will not suffer it to pass away in unnecessary pain.

Because is a subordinate conjunction, connecting he knows, etc. with the preceding clause. And connects the two parts of the subordinate clause. Make haste = hasten, agrees with man. To pass modifies suffer.

190-5. These wave their town-flag in the arched gateway, and stand, rolling their drum; but to no purpose.

And connects the first and the second member. Rolling, a participle, modifies these. But connects the second member with (They do it) to no purpose.

190—6. For none made sweeter melody Than did the poor blind boy.

For is an introductory conjunction. Than is a subordinate conjunction, connecting the latter clause with the former.

190—7. Whether the thing was green or blue.

Whether is an introductory conjunction. Or is a conjunction, connecting green and blue. Whether and or are correlatives.

190-8. No leave ask'st thou of either wind or tide.

Either and or are correlatives; or connects wind and tide.

Whether he was combined
With those of Norway; or 1 did line the rebel
With hidden help and vantage; or 2 that with both
He labor'd in his country's wrack, I know not.

Whether connects I know not with he was combined, etc.  $Or^1$  and  $or^2$  connect the clauses between which they are placed.

190—10. This, I think, I may at least say, that we should have a great many fewer disputes in the world if words were taken for what they are, the signs of our ideas only, and not for things themselves.

This is an adjective pronoun, the object of say. That is a conjunction, connecting the clause following with the clause preceding. A great many may be taken as a complex adverb in the sense of much, and modifies fewer.

195—1. The President having given his assent the bill became a law.

President is in the nominative independent or absolute, before having given.

195—2. Those barbarous ages past, succeeded next the birth-day of invention.

Ages is in the nominative independent or absolute, before (being) past. Succeeded is the predicate, and birthday the subject, of the sentence.

195—3. Then shall I be no more;
And Adam, wedded to another Eve,
Shall live with her enjoying; I [being] extinct.

I is in the nominative independent, or absolute, before (being) extinct. Wedded is a participle, modifying Adam.

195—4. Success being now hopeless, preparations were made for retreat.

Success is in the nominative independent, or absolute, before being.

195-5.

Thou looking on,

Shamed to be overcome or overreached, Would utmost vigor raise.

Thou is in the nominative to would raise. Looking on and shamed are participles, referring to thou. Vigor is in the objective after would raise.

195-1. Awake, my St. John, leave all meaner things.

St. John is independent by address.

195—2. Oh the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and knowledge of God!

Depth is independent by exclamation.

195—3. A horse! a horse! my kingdom for a horse! Horse! and horse! are independent by exclamation.

195-4. Plato, thou reasonest well.

Plato is independent by address.

195—5. O thou that with surpassing glory crowned,
Look'st from thy sole dominion, like the god
Of this new world,

O sun! to tell thee how I hate thy beams.

Thou is in the nominative independent by exclamation. Like is an adjective, followed by the phrase, (unto) God. To tell modifies a predicate understood.

195—6. The gallant king, he skirted still The margin of that mighty hill.

King is independent by pleonasm.

209-5. Nothing in his life became him like the leaving it.

Nothing is the simple subject. Nothing in his life is the logical subject. Like is a conjunctive adverb. Leaving is in the nominative to a verb understood.

209—6. All the land, in flowery squares, beneath a broad and equal-blowing wind, smelt of the coming summer.

Land is the simple subject. The logical subject is All the land, etc., including all preceding smelt.

209—7. The morn, in russet mantle clad, Walks o'er the dew of you high eastern hill.

Morn is the simple subject, and the whole of the first line the logical subject. Clad is a participle, modifying morn.

209—8. Short-lived likings may be bred By a glance from fickle eyes.

Likings is the simple subject, and short-lived likings, the logical subject.

209—9. Under her torn hat glowed the wealth Of simple beauty and rustic health.

Wealth is the simple subject. The wealth of simple beauty and rustic health is the logical subject.

209—10. Night, sable goddess, from her ebon throne, In rayless majesty now stretches forth Her leaden sceptre o'er a prostrate world.

Night is the simple subject. Night, sable goddess, is the logical subject.

221—1. In unploughed Maine he sought the lumberer's gang. In unploughed Maine modifies sought. Gang is the direct object of sought.

221—2. Heaven from all creatures hides the book of fate.

Heaven is the subject. Book is the direct object of hides, the predicate. The phrase, from all creatures, modifies hides.

221—3. Stormed at with shot and shell, Boldly they rode and well.

Stormed at, etc. modifies they. At is a complex participle, modifying they. Boldly and well are adverbs, modifying rode.

221—4. Shall we gather strength by irresolution and inaction?

By irresolution and inaction modifies gather.

221—5. The moon threw its silvery light upon the rippling waters of the lake.

Upon the rippling waters modifies threw.

221—6. Tell all the world thy joy.

(To) all the world modifies tell.

221—7. Clad in a robe of everlasting snow, Mount Everest towers above all other mountain-peaks of the globe.

Clad, etc. modifies the subject, Mount Everest. All and other modify mountain-peaks.

221—8. Now upon Syria's land of roses Softly the light of eve reposes.

Light is the subject. Reposes is the predicate. Now, softly, and the phrase, Upon Syria's land, etc., modify reposes.

221-9. Where are you going this summer?

Are going is modified by where, and by the phrase, (during) this summer.

221—10. Be not like dumb, driven cattle.

Be like is the predicate. Like, an adjective, is modified by the phrase, (Unto) dumb, driven cattle.

221-11. The mournful tidings of the death of his son filled the proud heart of the old man with the keenest anguish.

With keenest anguish modifies filled.

221—12. Forbid it, Almighty God!

Forbid, the predicate, agrees with the subject understood. Almighty God is independent by exclamation.

221—13. How wonderful is sleep!

Sleep is the subject. Is wonderful is the predicate. How modifies wonderful.

221-14. Harvey, the discoverer of the circulation of the blood, was an eminent English physician.

Harvey is the subject. Was physician is the predicate. The discoverer, etc. is in apposition with Harvey, and modifies that word.

221—15. When shall we be stronger?

We is the subject. Shall be stronger is the predicate. When modifies shall be.

221—16. Vex thou not the poet's mind.

Thou is the subject. Vex is the predicate. Mind is the direct object.

221-17. Did they make him master?

They is the subject. Make master is the predicate, master being a factitive noun.

222—18. What a world of happiness their harmony foretells! Harmony is the subject. Foretells is the predicate. World is the direct object. It is modified by what, a, and the phrase of happiness.

222—19. Between it and the garden lies
A league of grass, washed by a slow broad stream.

League is the subject. Lies is the predicate. The phrase between it, etc., modifies lies. Washed, etc. modifies grass.

222—20. Oh, ever thus, from childhood's hour I've seen my fondest hopes decay.

I is the subject. Have seen is the predicate. Decay modifies hopes. Thus and ever modify have seen.

222—1. The master gave his scholars a lesson to learn.

To learn modifies lesson.

222-2. The ploughman homeward plods his weary way.

Homeward, an adverb, modifies plods. Weary modifies way.

222—3. Will it be the next week or the next year?

(During) the next week and (during) the next year modify will be.

224—4. I will give thee a silver pound to row us o'er the ferry.

(To) thee modifies will give. To row also modifies will give.

222—5. Having ridden up to the spot, the enraged officer struck the unfortunate man dead with a single blow of his sword.

Struck dead is the predicate, dead being a factitive adjective. Having ridden, etc. modifies officer. Man is the direct object of struck dead.

222—6. To reach Cathay, famed in the writings of Marco Polo, fired the imagination of the daring navigator.

To reach is the subject. Famed modifies Cathay.

222—7. I saw a man with a sword.

With a sword modifies man.

222—8. He found all his wants supplied by the care of his friends.

Found supplied is the predicate. Wants is the direct object of found. Supplied is an adjective, referring to wants.

222-9. All but one were killed.

But one = except one, modifies all.

222-11. Flattered to tears this aged man and poor.

Flattered modifies man.

222—12. The scholar did nothing but read.

But read = but to read, modifies nothing.

222—13. He does not laugh.

Does laugh is the predicate. Not modifies does.

222-14. My mother gave me a letter to read.

(To) me modifies gave. To read modifies letter.

222-15. What did you come here for?"

Did come is the predicate. For what modifies did come.

229—1. The rose that all are praising is not the rose for me.

The clause, that all are praising, modifies rose, the subject.

229—2. When we go forth in the morning we lay a moulding hand upon our destiny.

The subordinate clause, When we go, etc., modifies lay, the predicate of the principal clause. Forth modifies go.

229—3. Whilst light and colors rise and fly, Lives Newton's deathless memory.

Memory is the subject of the main clause. Lives is the predicate. The subordinate clause, Whilst light, etc., modifies lives.

229—4. The boy stood on the burning deck, Whence all but him had fled.

Whence all but him, etc. modifies deck. The phrase, but  $him = except \ him$ , modifies all.

229—5. When he was a boy, Franklin, who afterward became a distinguished statesman and philosopher, learned his trade in the printing-office of his brother, who published a paper in Boston.

Franklin is the subject of the main clause. Learned is the predicate. When he was a boy modifies learned. Who afterward became, etc. modifies Franklin. Who published, etc. modifies brother.

229—6. He that fights and runs away May live to fight another day.

That fights, etc. modifies the subject he. To fight modifies may live. Day is in the objective after a preposition understood.

229—7. Go into Turkey, where the pachas will tell you that the Turkish government is the most perfect in the world.

The subject of the main clause is understood. Go is the predicate. Where the pachas, etc. modifies Turkey. The direct object of tell is that the Turkish government, etc. Most perfect modifies government understood.

229—8. The Dutch florist who sells tulips for their weight in gold laughs at the antiquary who pays a great price for a rusty lamp.

Who sells, etc. modifies florist, the subject of the main clause. Laughs is the predicate. Who pays, etc. modifies antiquary.

229—9. When I look upon the tombs of the great, every emotion of envy dies in me.

Emotion is the subject of the main clause. Dies is the predicate. When I look, etc. modifies dies.

229—10. We must not think the life of a man begins when he can feed himself.

The direct object of must think is the life of a man begins, etc. When he can feed himself modifies begins.

229—11. Tell me not in mournful numbers
Life is but an empty dream!

The subject of the main clause is understood. Tell is the predicate. (To) me modifies tell. The direct object of tell is the second line, of which life is the subject and is dream is the predicate. But, an adverb, modifies is.

230—12. When in the course of human events, it becomes necessary for one people to dissolve the political bands which have connected them with another, and to assume, among the powers of the earth, the separate and equal station to which the laws of nature and of nature's God entitle them, a decent respect to the opinions of mankind requires that they should declare the causes which impel them to the separation.

Of the main clause, respect is the subject and requires is the predicate. The direct object is the clause, that they should, etc. When it becomes, etc. modifies requires. The phrase, in the course, modifies becomes. Which have connected modifies bands. To dissolve and to assume modify it. The clause, to which the laws of nature, etc., modifies station.

230—1. I do not admire such books as he writes.

As he writes modifies books adjectively. This is probably equivalent to as those are which he writes.

230—2. It is only by the fresh feelings of the heart that mankind can be very powerfully affected.

It, the subject of the main clause, is modified by the explanatory clause introduced by that. Only modifies by feelings. By feelings modifies is. That is an introductory conjunction.

230—3. That man has been from time immemorial a right-handed animal is beyond dispute.

That is an introductory conjunction, introducing the noun clause which is the subject of the sentence, includ-

ing all preceding is. In the subordinate clause has been animal is the predicate. From time modifies has been. Immemorial, an adjective, modifies time.

230—4. He is proud that he is noble.

The clause, that he is noble, modifies proud adverbially.

230-5. The boy ran so fast that I could not overtake him.

Fast, an adverb, modifies ran. So modifies fast. The clause, that I could, etc., modifies so.

230—6. My Father is greater than I.

Than I (am great) modifies greater.

230-7. Oh! that I knew where I might find him!

This sentence is equivalent to Oh! (I wish) that I knew, etc. Where I might find him modifies knew.

230-8. The older you become, the wiser you should be.

The second clause is the principal, and the first, the subordinate. Should be wiser is the predicate of the main clause. The is an adverb, modifying wiser. Become older is the predicate of the subordinate clause. The modifies older adverbially.

230-9. His conduct is not such as I admire.

Of the main clause is such is the predicate. The subordinate clause, as I admire, modifies such.

230—10. See here is a bower

Of eglantine with honeysuckles woven, Where not a spark of prying light creeps in.

See is the predicate of the main clause. Of eglantine modifies bower. Woven modifies eglantine. Where not a spark, etc. modifies bower.

230—11. The lamb thy riot doomed to bleed to-day,

Had he 1 thy reason, would he 2 skip and play?

He<sup>2</sup> is the subject of the main clause. Would skip and play is the predicate. Lamb is in the nominative

independent by pleonasm. The clause, thy riot doomed (which) to bleed to-day, modifies lamb. Had he thy reason = if he had thy reason, modifies would skip and play.

230—12. Tis better to have loved and lost Than never to have loved at all.

It is the subject of the main clause. The phrase, to have loved and (to have) lost, modifies the subject it. The last line is equivalent to Than (it is good) never to have loved at all. Never modifies to have loved.

233—3. If Hannibal had not wintered at Capua, by which circumstance his troops were enervated, but, on the contrary, after the battle of Cannæ, had proceeded to Rome, it is not improbable that the great city would have fallen.

Of the main clause, it is the subject, modified by the explanatory clause, that the great city, etc. Is improbable is the predicate. The clause, If Hannibal had, etc., modifies would have fallen. The clause, By which circumstance, etc., modifies had wintered. But connects had wintered and had proceeded. After the battle, etc. modifies had proceeded. On the contrary modifies had proceeded.

233—4. Time but the impression deeper makes,
As streams their channels deeper wear.

Time is the subject, and makes deeper, the predicate, of the main clause. But = only, modifies makes deeper. The subordinate clause modifies makes deeper. Streams is the subject, and wear deeper, the predicate, of the subordinate clause. Channels is the direct object of wear.

233—5. Gayly chattering to the clattering
Of the brown nuts downward pattering,
Leap the squirrels red and gray.

Squirrels is the subject, and leap the predicate. Chattering modifies squirrels. Clattering is in the objective

after to. Pattering modifies nuts. Downward modifies pattering.

233—6. The long-remembered beggar was his guest. Long-remembered modifies beggar.

133—7. All<sup>1</sup> that<sup>1</sup> I<sup>1</sup> have, and all<sup>2</sup> that<sup>2</sup> I<sup>2</sup> am, and all<sup>3</sup> that<sup>3</sup> I<sup>3</sup> hope, in this life, I<sup>4</sup> am now ready here to stake upon it; and I<sup>5</sup> leave off as I<sup>6</sup> began, that, live or die, survive or perish, I<sup>7</sup> am for the Declaration.

In the first member  $I^4$  is the subject, and am ready the predicate, of the main clause. To stake modifies ready. Here modifies stake. The three clauses introduced by all, all, all, all, all are the direct objects of stake. All in each of the clauses is modified by the relative clause following. That is in the objective after have; that is a predicate nominative after am; that is the direct object of hope. In this world modifies have, am, and hope. In the second member,  $I^5$  is the subject, and leave off is the predicate. As I began modifies leave off. That I am for, etc. also modifies leave off. The verb am is modified by the clauses, (If I) live or (if I) die, (if I) survive or (if I) perish.

233—8. The evil that men do lives after them;
The good is oft interred with their bones.

Evil is the subject of the first member, modified by the clause, that men do. That is the direct object of do. Lives is the predicate. In the second member good, used as a noun, is the subject.

233—9. Toiling, rejoicing, sorrowing, onward through life he goes.

Toiling, rejoicing, sorrowing are participles, modifying he, the subject. Onward modifies goes, the predicate.

233—10. In such a cause I grant
An English poet's privilege to rant.

I is the subject, and grant, the predicate. Privilege is the direct object. To rant modifies privilege. In such a cause modifies to rant.

233—11. Hence, loathèd melancholy, Of Cerberus and blackest midnight born, In Stygian cave forlorn,

'Mongst horrid shapes and shrieks and sights unholy.

It is evident that this sentence should have a comma placed after hence, which is an adverb, modifying go or get understood. Melancholy is in the nominative independent. Loathèd is an adjective, modifying melancholy. Born is a participle, modifying melancholy. Forlorn is an adjective, modifying cave.

233—12. We do not, indeed, expect all men to be philosophers or statesmen, but we confidently trust—and our expectation of the duration of our system of government rests on that trust—that by the diffusion of general knowledge and good and virtuous sentiments the political fabric may be secure, as well against open violence and overthrow as against that slow but sure undermining of licentiousness.

Indeed is independent. Men is the direct object of expect, the predicate, and is here used as the assumed subject of to be philosophers, etc. That by the diffusion, etc. modifies trust. The phrase, by the diffusion, etc., modifies secure. As well as is a complex conjunction, joining the two phrases, against violence and overthrow and against undermining, both of which modify secure. But, a conjunction, connects the two adjectives slow and sure.

233—13. If we confine our view to the globe we inhabit, it must be allowed that chemistry and geology are the two sciences which not only offer the fairest promise, but already contain the largest generalizations.

It is the subject of the main clause; it is modified by

the explanatory clause, that chemistry, etc. Must be allowed is the predicate of the main clause; it is modified by the subordinate clause, If we confine our view, etc. Which not only offer, etc. modifies sciences. Not only and but are correlatives.

233-14. Better to reign in hell than serve in heaven.

It understood is the subject of the main clause; (were) better is the predicate. The second clause is equivalent to than (it were good) to serve in heaven. To reign modifies it; to serve modifies it understood in the subordinate clause.

234—15. Where are the flowers, that lately sprung and stood

In brighter light and softer airs, a beauteous sister-hood?

Flowers<sup>1</sup> is the subject of the main clause. Flowers<sup>2</sup> is in apposition with flowers<sup>1</sup>. The subordinate clause introduced by that modifies flowers<sup>1</sup>. Stood sisterhood = were sisterhood, is the predicate of the subordinate clause.

234—16. Here rests his head upon the lap of earth A youth to fortune and to fame unknown.

Head is the subject. Youth is in apposition with his. Unknown modifies youth. To fortune and to fame modify unknown. The second line modifies his as an adjective element; youth, the basis, being in apposition with his.

234—17. Further observation and experience have given me a different idea of this feathered voluptuary, which I will venture to impart, for the benefit of my young readers who may regard him with the same unqualified envy and admiration which I once indulged.

Observation and experience are the subjects of the main clause. Idea is the direct object of the predicate have given. The clause, which I venture, etc., modifies idea.

Who may regard, etc. modifies readers. Which I once indulged modifies envy and admiration.

234—18. All nature is but art unknown to thee;
All chance, direction which thou canst not see;
All discord, harmony not understood;
All partial evil, universal good.

Note.—See page 142—2 for this sentence.

234—19. That moss-covered vessel I hail as a treasure,

For often, at noon, when returned from the field,

I found it the source of an exquisite pleasure,

The purest and sweetest that nature can yield.

Vessel is the direct object of hail. As is an introductory conjunction. Treasure is in apposition with vessel. Returned is a participle, modifying I. Source is in the same case as it by predication, the expression meaning I found it (to be) the source, etc.

234—21. On the cross-beam under the Old South bell
The nest of a pigeon is builded well.
In summer and winter that bird is there,
Out and in with the morning air.
I love to see him track the street
With his wary eye and active feet;
And I often watch him as he springs,
Circling the steeple with easy wings,
Till across the dial his shade has passed,
And the belfry edge is gained at last.

Under the Old South bell modifies beam. In summer and (in) winter modify is. Out and in is a complex adverb, modifying going understood. To see modifies love. (To) track modifies him. As he springs modifies watch. Circling modifies he. Till his shade has passed modifies circling.

234—22. There is a land, of every land the pride, Beloved of heaven o'er all the world beside.

There is an independent adverb. Land 1 is the subject

of the sentence. Pride is in apposition with land 1. Beloved modifies land 1. O'er world modifies beloved. All, the, and beside modify world.

234—23. Now leave complaining and begin your tea.

Leave is the predicate of the first member, and begin, of the second. The subject in each is understood.

234—24. This is the forest primeval. The murmuring pines and the hemlock

Bearded with moss, and in garments green, indistinct in the twilight,

Stand<sup>1</sup> like Druids of old with voices sad and prophetic,

Stand<sup>2</sup> like harpers hoar, with beards that rest on their bosoms.

Primeval is an adjective, modifying forest. Pines and hemlock is the compound subject of the second sentence. Stand and stand is the predicate. Bearded modifies the subject. In green garments also modifies the subject. Indistinct, an adjective, modifies pines and hemlock. Like is a conjunctive adverb. Druids is the subject of stood understood. Stand is modified by the subordinate clause, Like harpers hoar (stand). With beards, etc. modifies harpers.

234—25. On a sudden, open fly
With impetuous recoil and jarring sounds
The infernal doors; and on their hinges grate
Harsh thunder.

Doors is the subject of the first member. Fly is the predicate. In the second member doors understood is the subject, and grate, the predicate. Thunder is the direct object of grate.

234—26. In her ear he whispers gayly,

"If my heart by signs can tell,

Maiden, I have watched thee daily,

And I think thou lov'st me well."

Whispers is the predicate. The last three lines are the direct object of whispers. Maiden is independent. The second line modifies lov'st. By signs modifies can tell.

234—27. We next hear of him, with myriads of his kind, banqueting among the reeds of the Delaware, and grown corpulent with good feeding. He has changed his name in travelling. Boblincon no more—he is the reed-bird now, the much-soughtfor titbit of Pennsylvania epicures, the rival in unlucky fame of the ortolan! Wherever he goes, pop! pop! pop! every rusty firelock in the country is blazing away. He sees his companions falling by thousands around him. Does he take warning and reform? Alas! not he. Incorrigible epicure! again he wings his flight. The rice-swamps of the South invite him. He gorges himself among them almost to bursting; he can scarcely fly for corpulency. He has once more changed his name, and is now the famous rice-bird of the Carolinas. Last stage of his career: behold him spitted, with dozens of his corpulent companions, and served up, a vaunted dish, on the table of some Southern gastronome.

Banqueting modifies him. Grown corpulent also modifies him. With myriads, etc. modifies banqueting. Boblincon no more = he is Boblincon no more. Titbit is in apposition with reed-bird, so also is rival. Pop, pop, pop are used as nouns in the objective after hear underderstood. Falling modifies companions. Around him modifies fall. Incorrigible epicure is independent. To bursting modifies gorges. Almost modifies to bursting. More modifies has changed. This is is understood before last stage. Spitted modifies him. With dozens, etc. modifies him. Served up modifies him. Dish is in apposition with him.















